

# FORD **KUGA VIGNALE** Owner's Manual





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3854en 202012 20210414143637



# Table of Contents

## Introduction

Acknowledgments .....	9
About This Manual .....	9
Symbols Glossary .....	9
Data Recording .....	11
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	15
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	15

## Environment

Protecting the Environment .....	17
----------------------------------	----

## At a Glance

Instrument Panel - LHD .....	18
Instrument Panel - RHD .....	20

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	22
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	23
Child Restraints .....	24
Booster Seats .....	28
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks .....	29
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks .....	29

## Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts .....	31
Seatbelt Height Adjustment .....	32
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	32
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	34

## Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation .....	36
Driver Airbag .....	36
Passenger Airbag .....	37
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	37
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	38
Side Airbags .....	39
Driver Knee Airbag .....	40
Side Curtain Airbags .....	40

## Pedestrian Protection

Pedestrian Alert System .....	42
-------------------------------	----

## eCall

What Is eCall .....	43
How Does eCall Work .....	43
Emergency Call Requirements .....	43
Emergency Call Limitations .....	43
Manually Making an Emergency Call .....	43
Emergency Call Indicators .....	44
Changing the Backup Battery .....	45
eCall – Troubleshooting .....	45

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies .....	46
Remote Control .....	46
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	51

## MyKey™

What Is MyKey .....	52
MyKey Settings .....	52
Creating a MyKey .....	53
Programming a MyKey .....	53
Clearing All MyKeys .....	53
Checking MyKey System Status .....	54
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	54

# Table of Contents

MyKey – Troubleshooting .....	54
-------------------------------	----

## Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking .....	56
-----------------------------	----

## Liftgate

Manual Liftgate .....	60
Power Liftgate .....	61

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	65
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery .....	65
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor .....	67

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	69
Audio Control .....	69
Voice Control .....	70
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering .....	70
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	70
Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Cruise Control .....	71

Information Display Control - Vehicles Without: Head Up Display (HUD) .....	71
Information Display Control - Vehicles With: Head Up Display (HUD) .....	71
Heated Steering Wheel .....	71

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers .....	73
Autowipers .....	74
Windshield Washers - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	74
Windshield Washers - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	75
Rear Window Wiper and Washers .....	76
Headlamp Washers .....	76

## Lighting

General Information .....	77
Lighting Control .....	77
Autolamps .....	78
Instrument Lighting Dimmer .....	78
Headlamp Exit Delay .....	78
Daytime Running Lamps .....	79
Glare-Free High Beam .....	79
Front Fog Lamps .....	81
Rear Fog Lamps .....	81

Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Automatic Headlamp Leveling .....	81
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With: Manual Headlamp Leveling .....	82
Adaptive Headlamps .....	82
Direction Indicators .....	85
Interior Lamps .....	85
Ambient Lighting .....	86

## Automatic High Beam Control

What Is Automatic High Beam Control .....	87
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off .....	87
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	88
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators .....	88
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control .....	88

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows .....	89
Global Opening and Closing .....	90
Exterior Mirrors .....	90
Interior Mirror .....	92

# Table of Contents

Sun Visors .....	92
Moonroof .....	92

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	94
Gauges - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	95
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	97
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/ Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	100
Gauges - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	104
Warning Lamps and Indicators .....	105
Audible Warnings and Indicators .....	109

## Information Displays

General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	111
General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ SYNC 2.5 .....	115

General Information - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ SYNC 3 .....	121
General Information - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/ SYNC 3 .....	124
Personalized Settings .....	127
Information Messages .....	130
Head Up Display .....	152

## Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

What Is Remote Start .....	157
Remote Start Limitations .....	157
Enabling Remote Start .....	157
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	157
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel .....	157
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel .....	158

## Climate Control

Manual Climate Control .....	159
Automatic Climate Control .....	160
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control .....	163

Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control .....	164
Heated Windshield .....	165
Heated Rear Window .....	165
Heated Exterior Mirrors .....	165
Auxiliary Heater .....	165

## Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	169
Locating the Cabin Air Filter .....	169
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	169

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position .....	170
Head Restraints .....	170
Manual Seats .....	172
Power Seats .....	173
Rear Seats .....	175
Heated Seats .....	175

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	177
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	177

# Table of Contents

Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	177
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	177
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	178
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	178
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	178

## Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points .....	179
Wireless Accessory Charger .....	180

## Storage Compartments

Overhead Console .....	181
------------------------	-----

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information .....	182
Keyless Starting .....	182
Starting a Gasoline Engine .....	183
Starting a Diesel Engine .....	185
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System .....	187

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV) .....	190
Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission .....	192
Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission .....	193
Hybrid Vehicle Operation .....	195
Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation .....	197
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions .....	199

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions .....	201
Fuel Quality - Diesel .....	201
Fuel Quality - Gasoline .....	202
Fuel Quality - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	202
Fuel Filler Funnel Location .....	203
Running Out of Fuel .....	203
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	204
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	207
Fuel Consumption .....	210

## Engine Emission Control

Catalytic Converter .....	211
Selective Catalytic Reductant System .....	211
Gasoline Particulate Filter .....	216
Diesel Particulate Filter .....	218

## High Voltage Battery

General Information .....	221
Charging the High Voltage Battery .....	221

## Transmission

Manual Transmission .....	232
Automatic Transmission - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	232
Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	237

## All-Wheel Drive

Using All-Wheel Drive .....	242
-----------------------------	-----

## Brakes

General Information .....	244
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes .....	244



# Table of Contents

Electric Parking Brake .....	245
Electric Parking Brake .....	247
Hill Start Assist .....	250
Auto Hold .....	251

## Traction Control

Principle of Operation .....	253
Using Traction Control .....	253

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation .....	254
Using Stability Control .....	255

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation .....	256
Rear Parking Aid .....	256
Front Parking Aid .....	258
Side Sensing System .....	260
Active Park Assist - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – MMT6 .....	262
Active Park Assist - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission .....	265
Rear View Camera .....	268

## Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control .....	272
------------------------------	-----

Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....	272
Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....	272
Canceling the Set Speed .....	272
Resuming the Set Speed .....	273
Cruise Control Indicators .....	273

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work .....	274
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	274
What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering .....	274
What Is Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control .....	274
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering .....	274
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	275
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering .....	276
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	276

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	278
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	279
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	279
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	280
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	281
Canceling the Set Speed .....	282
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	282
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	282
Overriding the Set Speed .....	283
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering .....	283
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go .....	283
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control .....	283

# Table of Contents

Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	284
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	284
Switching Lane Centering On and Off .....	284
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	286
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	286
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	287
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	287
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	288
<b>Driving Aids</b>	
Speed Limiter .....	291
Driver Alert .....	293
Lane Keeping System .....	294
Blind Spot Information System .....	300
Cross Traffic Alert .....	303
Traffic Sign Recognition .....	307
Steering .....	308
Pre-Collision Assist - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control .....	309

Pre-Collision Assist - Vehicles With: Pre-Collision Assist .....	315
--	-----

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....	320
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	320
Drive Modes .....	320

## Efficient Drive Mode

What Is Efficient Drive Mode .....	322
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	322
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	322
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	322
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	322
Trip Summary .....	322
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators .....	323

## Current Highway Information

What Is Current Highway Information .....	324
---	-----

Enabling Current Highway Information .....	324
Checking Current Highway Information Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	324
Checking Current Highway Information Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen .....	324

## Load Carrying

General Information .....	325
Luggage Anchor Points .....	325
Rear Under Floor Storage .....	326
Cargo Nets .....	326
Luggage Covers .....	328
Roof Racks and Load Carriers .....	329
Dog Guard .....	330

## Towing

Towing a Trailer .....	331
Trailer Sway Control .....	332
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball .....	332
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball .....	335
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission, MMT6 .....	338
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels .....	338

# Table of Contents

## Driving Hints

Reduced Engine Performance .....	339
Economical Driving .....	339
Cold Weather Precautions .....	339
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold Weather Driving - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	340
Breaking-In .....	340
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	340
Floor Mats .....	341

## Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers .....	342
Fuel Shutoff .....	342
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	342
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	345
Transporting the Vehicle .....	348
Towing Points .....	349

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations .....	350
Fuse Specification Chart .....	350
Changing a Fuse .....	360

## Maintenance

General Information .....	362
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	362
Under Hood Overview .....	365
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	367
Under Hood Overview .....	369
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	371
Engine Oil Dipstick .....	372
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	372
Engine Oil Dipstick .....	372
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	373
Engine Oil Check .....	373
Oil Change Indicator Reset - 1.5L EcoBoost™/2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	374
Engine Coolant Check .....	374
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check .....	378
Brake Fluid Check .....	378
Clutch Fluid Check .....	379
Changing the 12V Battery .....	379
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	381
Washer Fluid Check .....	381

Checking the Wiper Blades .....	381
Changing the Wiper Blades .....	382
Changing a Bulb .....	382

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior .....	387
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades .....	387
Cleaning the Interior .....	388
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	389
Cleaning the Wheels .....	390
Body Styling Kits .....	390

## Wheels and Tires

General Information .....	391
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .....	391
Tire Care .....	396
Using Summer Tires .....	397
Using Winter Tires .....	397
Using Snow Chains .....	398
Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	399
Changing a Road Wheel .....	403
Tire Pressures .....	407
Lug Nuts .....	409

# Table of Contents

## Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions .....	411
Towbar Dimensions .....	412
Vehicle Identification Plate .....	414
Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	415
Vehicle Identification Number .....	416
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Diesel .....	416
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	420
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L, Diesel .....	424
Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	429
Bulb Specification Chart .....	432
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L Diesel .....	434
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L EcoBoost™ .....	435
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L, Diesel .....	436
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) .....	437
Fuel Consumption Figures .....	438

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	439
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	439
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	439
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	439
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	440
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem .....	440
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	441

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....	443
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	443

## Audio System

General Information .....	444
Audio Unit .....	444
Digital Radio .....	446
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	447
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	447
Playing Media From a USB Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	448

USB Port .....	448
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	449
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5 .....	452

## SYNC™ 3

General Information .....	453
Using Voice Recognition .....	455
Entertainment .....	463
Phone .....	465
Navigation .....	467
Electric Vehicle Information .....	472
Apps .....	477
Settings .....	478
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	480

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	492
eCall User Information .....	496
End User License Agreement .....	500
Declaration of Conformity .....	527
Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	527

# Introduction

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

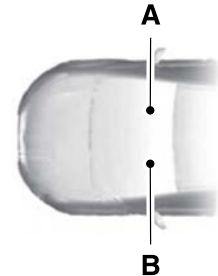
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.

# Introduction



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.

# Introduction



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

## DATA RECORDING



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

# Introduction

---

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Service Data

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

**Note:** *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

## Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.



# Introduction

**Note:** Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 478).

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

## Vehicles With a Modem (If Equipped)



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings.

# Introduction

---

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## Vehicles With SYNC

### Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 477).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, odometer, SYNC module number, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 478).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

## Vehicles With an Emergency Call System (if Equipped)

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system transmits are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle fuel type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.

# Introduction

**Note:** *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when

# Introduction

---

using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

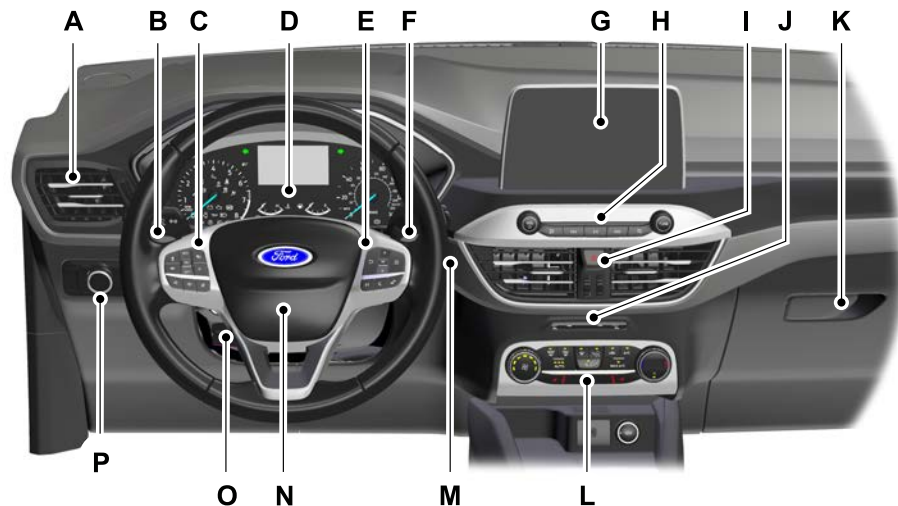
## **PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT**

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

## At a Glance

### INSTRUMENT PANEL - LHD



- A Air vents.
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 85).
- C Cruise controls. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 272).
- D Information Display. See **General Information** (page 111).

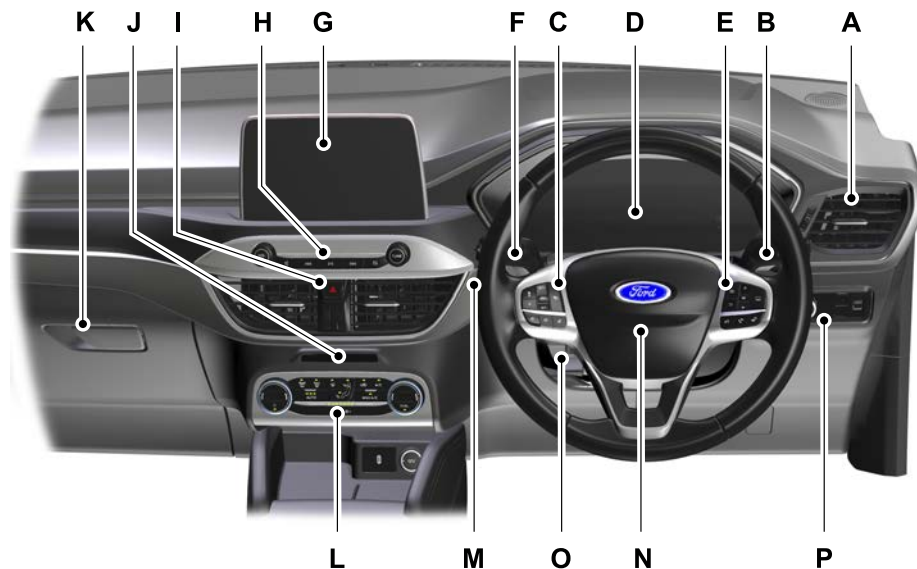
## At a Glance

---

- E Information display controls and audio controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 71). See **Audio Control** (page 69).
- F Wiper lever. See **Windshield Wipers** (page 73).
- G Touchscreen display.
- H Audio unit controls. See **Audio Unit** (page 444).
- I Hazard flasher. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 342).
- J Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 37).
- K Glove compartment.
- L Climate controls. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 160).
- M Push button ignition switch. See **Keyless Starting** (page 182).
- N Horn.
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 69).
- P Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 77).

## At a Glance

### INSTRUMENT PANEL - RHD



- A Air vents.
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 85).



## At a Glance

---

- C Cruise controls. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 272).
- D Information Display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- E Information display controls and audio controls. See **Information Display Control** (page 71). See **Audio Control** (page 69).
- F Wiper lever. See **Windshield Wipers** (page 73).
- G Touchscreen display.
- H Audio unit controls. See **Audio Unit** (page 444).
- I Hazard flasher. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 342).
- J Passenger airbag deactivation indicator. See **Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off** (page 37).
- K Glove compartment.
- L Climate controls. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 160).
- M Push button ignition switch. See **Keyless Starting** (page 182).
- N Horn.
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 69).
- P Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 77).

## Child Safety

### CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

**⚠ WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**⚠ WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

**⚠ WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not modify child restraints in any way.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING:** You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

**⚠ WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

## Child Safety

**⚠ WARNING:** If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

**⚠ WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

### CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

#### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

#### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

#### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are on the back of the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON.</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF.</b>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>	U <sup>1</sup>
Rear seats. <sup>2</sup>	U	U	U	U	U

<sup>1</sup> We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

**UF** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

## Child Safety

### ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G <sup>1</sup>	E <sup>1</sup>	C, D, E <sup>1</sup>	A, B, B1 <sup>1</sup>	C, D <sup>1</sup>
	Fixture.	L1, L2 <sup>1</sup>	R1 <sup>1</sup>	R1, R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup>	F2, F2X, F3 <sup>1</sup>	R2X, R2, R3 <sup>1</sup>
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

<sup>1</sup> The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

**IL** Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

**IUF** Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

## Child Safety

### i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b> .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>	B2, B3 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

**i-U** Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

**X** Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

## Child Safety

### CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. <sup>1</sup>	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. <sup>1</sup>	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. <sup>1,2</sup>	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg (49–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KidFix. <sup>1,2</sup>	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

<sup>1</sup>We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

<sup>2</sup>We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

**Note:** Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



**WARNING:** Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



**WARNING:** Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

**Note:** When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

## BOOSTER SEATS

### Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.



## Child Safety

### Booster Cushion

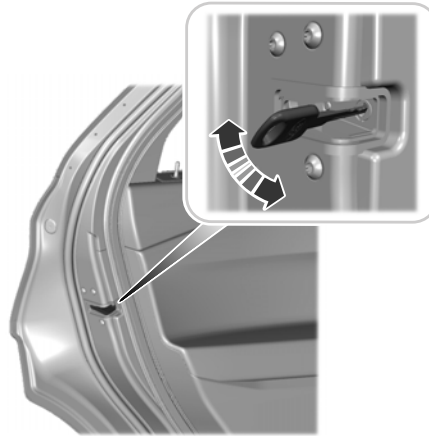
**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS

When these locks are set, you cannot open the rear doors from the inside.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counter clockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counter clockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS

**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

The child safety lock control is on the driver door.



Press the control to switch the child safety locks on. Press the control again to switch them off.

A LED (light emitting diode) on the child safety lock control illuminates when you switch them on. If the LED flashes, try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the LED continues to flash, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** You cannot use the rear power window controls if you switch the child safety locks on.

## Child Safety


---

### Child Safety Locks Information Messages

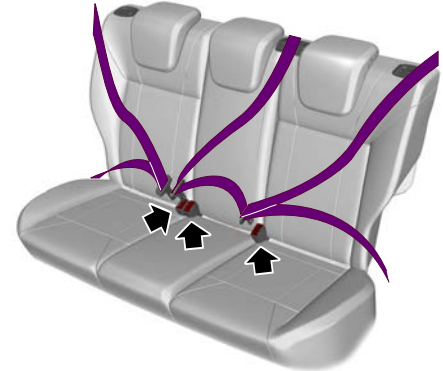
Message	Action
Child lock malfunction See manual	Try to switch the child safety locks on again. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Seatbelts

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

 **WARNING:** Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a click.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door.



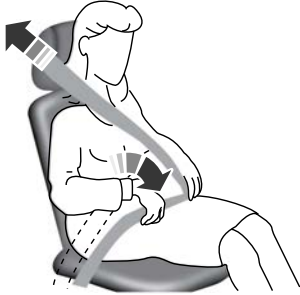
Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

The rear outer safety belts can lock if you return the seatback from a folded position to the upright position forcefully. Should the safety belt lock, recline the seat using the recline adjustment. See **Rear Seats** (page 175).

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

# Seatbelts

## Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



**WARNING:** Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

### Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

### Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

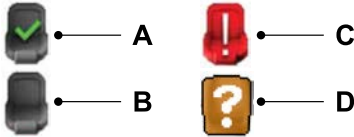
# Seatbelts

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

## Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

### Seatbelt Status



- C    Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D    Fault.

- A    Seatbelt fastened.
- B    Seatbelt not fastened.

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Information	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Seatbelts	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Seatbelts

## Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### SEATBELT REMINDER - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

#### Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

#### Fasten Seatbelt Audible Warning

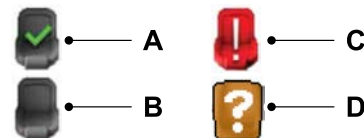
A warning tone sounds if the warning lamp illuminates and your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for up to five minutes or until you fasten your seatbelt.

#### Switching the Audible Warning Off

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## Seatbelt Status



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Rear seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

#### Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

# Seatbelts

2. Select **Select screens**.
3. Select **Seatbelts**.

## Seatbelt Status Information Messages

Message	Description
Rear belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

**WARNING:** Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

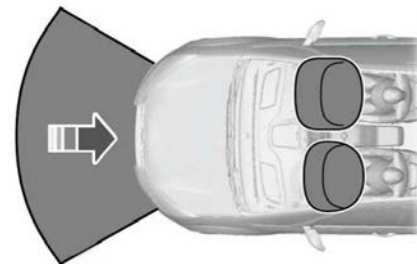
**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

**Note:** A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth.

## DRIVER AIRBAG

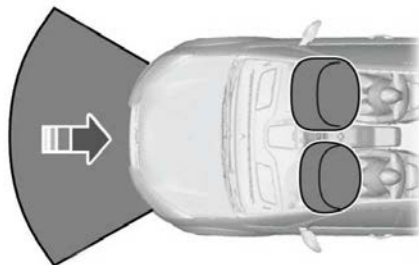


The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.



## Supplementary Restraints System

### PASSENGER AIRBAG



The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflates on contact with the occupant. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

### Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Airbag Secondary Warning Audible Warning

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

### SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



The passenger airbag on and off indicators are near the climate control unit.

## Supplementary Restraints System

### Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **Off**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag off indicator illuminates.

**Note:** If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the touchscreen.

### Switching the Passenger Airbag On



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Passenger airbag**.
4. Select **On**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.
6. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag on indicator illuminates.

**Note:** If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF- VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



The passenger airbag on and off indicators are close to the climate control unit.

# Supplementary Restraints System

## Switching the Passenger Airbag Off



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Passenger airbag**.
5. Select **Passenger airbag off**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.
7. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag off indicator illuminates.

**Note:** If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Switching the Passenger Airbag On



**WARNING:** You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Passenger airbag**.
5. Select **Passenger airbag on**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.
7. Switch the ignition off and on and check that the passenger airbag on indicator illuminates.

**Note:** If it does not illuminate, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## SIDE AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Supplementary Restraints System

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.



The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It might also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

### DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The knee airbag is under the instrument panel. The system works along with the front airbags to help reduce injury to the legs. When the airbags activate in a crash, the knee airbag deploys from under the instrument panel. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

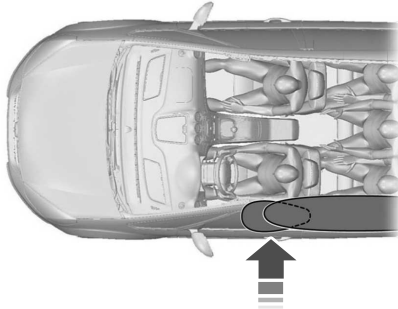
**Note:** The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor crash, it is possible that only the knee airbag deploys.

### SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

## Supplementary Restraints System

---



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

# Pedestrian Protection

---

## **PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

Due to the quiet operation of hybrid and electric vehicles at low speeds, the system creates a subtle sound to alert pedestrians.

The system is on when your vehicle is running and not in park (P). Some sound may be audible in the passenger compartment.

## WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 496).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

## HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service.

**Note:** *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

**Note:** *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

## MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



**WARNING:** Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

# eCall

3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

**Note:** Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

**Note:** After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for up to an hour.

## EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS



**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



## CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

## ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency call system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Keys and Remote Controls

### GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

**Note:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**Note:** Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

**Note:** The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

### Declaration of Conformity

Your vehicle is fitted with components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to European Directive 2014/EU.

### REMOTE CONTROL

#### Type 1 Remote Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.



Your passive key operates the power locks and liftgate. The remote control must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

### Removable Key Blade

Your remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

## Keys and Remote Controls



Press the release button and pull the key blade out.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

### Replacing the Battery

**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of remote control batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.



A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

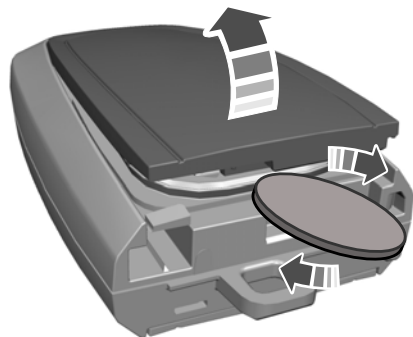
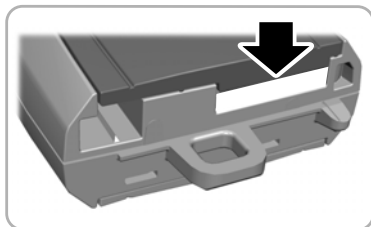
### The Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

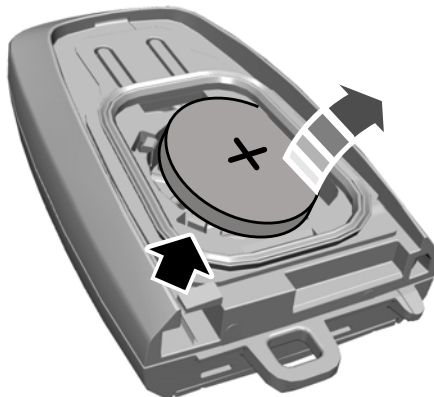


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the remote control and install the key blade.

### Type 2 Remote Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.



E266840

Your passive key operates the power locks and liftgate. The remote control must be in your vehicle to activate the push-button start system.

### Removable Key Blade

Your remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

### Replacing the Battery



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Refer to local regulations when disposing of remote control batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

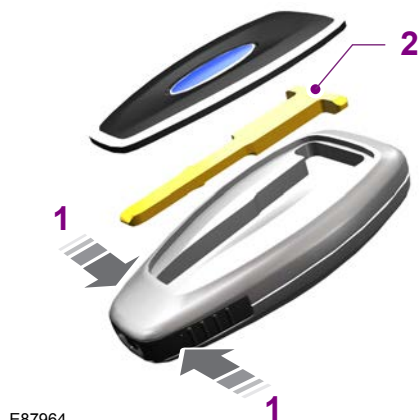


A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low.

### The Remote Control Battery

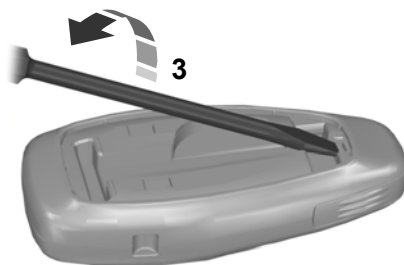
The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

## Keys and Remote Controls



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.



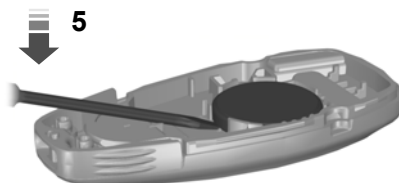
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully separate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

# Keys and Remote Controls

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

6. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.

8. Reinstall the key blade.

## Locating Your Vehicle



Press the button twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

## Memory Feature (If Equipped)

You can program your remote control to recall memory positions.

If programmed to a pre-set position, the remote control recalls memory positions when you unlock your vehicle. If you have the easy entry and exit feature enabled and the ignition is off, the seat moves to the easy entry position.

The seat moves to the driver memory position when you switch the ignition on.

## Remote Control Information Messages

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

## WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

#### Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the drivers, and in some instances, passengers, fasten their seatbelts.

**Note:** *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, then the radio may not mute.*

#### Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Satellite radio adult content restrictions.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

## Driving and Parking Aids

Parking aids, blind spot information system and cross traffic alert turn on when you start the engine and cannot be switched off with a MyKey.

Pre-collision assist and lane keeping alert turn on when you start the engine, but can be switched off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands when using a MyKey, and with your vehicle moving.

**Note:** *MyKey drivers may be able to turn the lane departure warning feature off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

## CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

## Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

## Speed Reminder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.



## Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume is reduced. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

## Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## Do Not Disturb

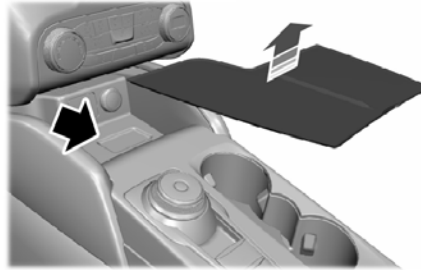
If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

**Note:** *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on. If the vehicle comes with satellite radio, the adult content is not restricted.*

## Traction Control

If you set traction control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY



1. Remove the mat covering the backup location.
2. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.
3. Place the passive key in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
4. Switch the ignition on.
5. Using your touchscreen, press **Menu**.
6. Press **Settings**.
7. Press **Vehicle**.
8. Press **MyKey**.
9. Press **Create MyKey**.

10. Press **Yes** if you want to create the key as MyKey. A confirmation message will appear on the screen.
11. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program any remote control to become a restricted MyKey, but you must leave one unmodified as an admin key.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.
6. Configure the setting

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.

4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Clear all MyKeys**.
6. Press **Yes**.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey, and the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.

4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **MyKey Information**.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with unapproved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for an approved remote start system.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 53).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

### Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

### Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

### Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

### Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 53).

### Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

# Doors and Locks

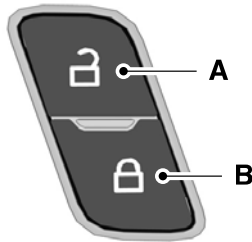
## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

**Note:** Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

### Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



- A    Unlock.
- B    Lock.

### Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

### Remote Control

#### Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door.

Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

With the ignition off, press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all door unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry and keypad.

To change these settings use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Press Settings.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Locks.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the instrument cluster display.

### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the direction indicators flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

### Mislock

If any door or the liftgate is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.

### Double Locking the Doors



**WARNING:** Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

## Doors and Locks

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. It will only operate if all doors are fully closed.



Press the button twice within three seconds. Three short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all doors have been double locked and that the alarm has been armed.

### Opening the Power Liftgate

**Note:** The button may vary depending on remote type.

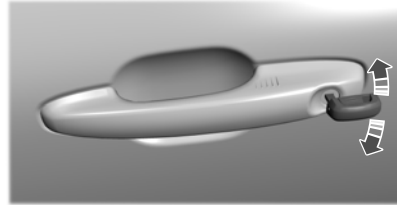


Press the button twice within three seconds.



### Individual Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

If your remote control or central locking feature is inoperative, or your vehicle battery is dead, you can lock or unlock each door using the key blade.

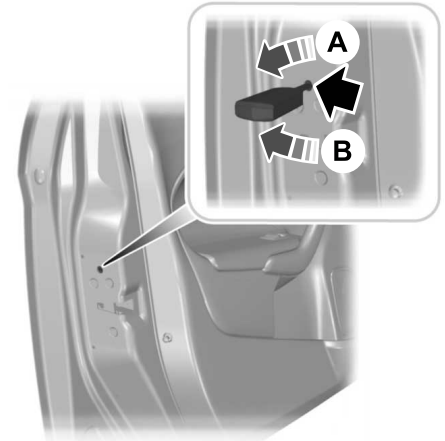


#### Locking the Driver Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into the driver door handle lock cylinder, turn the key up toward the front of your vehicle to lock.

#### Unlocking the Driver Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into the driver door handle lock cylinder, turn the key down toward the rear of your vehicle to unlock.



#### Locking the Passenger Door with the Key Blade

Insert the key blade into each door jamb lock feature, turn the key down to lock.

#### Unlocking the Passenger Door from the Inside

Once you unlock the driver door, pull each interior passenger door handle once to unlock and open the door.

# Doors and Locks

## Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

### General Information

You can unlock and lock the vehicle without taking the keys out of your pocket or purse when your passive key is within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle. Keyless entry uses a sensor on the back of the door handle for unlocking, and a separate sensor on the top of each door handle for locking.

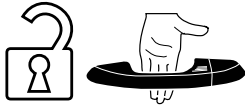
The system does not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

**Note:** If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

### Unlocking Using Keyless Entry



With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The keyless entry system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

### Locking Using Keyless Entry



With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

### At the Liftgate

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

## Smart Unlocks for Passive Keys

This feature helps to prevent you from locking your passive key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or rear cargo area. When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, the transmission is in park (P) and the ignition is off, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system finds a passive key, all the doors will immediately unlock and the horn will sound twice, indicating that a key is inside.

### Auto Relock

If you press the unlock button on the remote control and do not open a door within 45 seconds, your vehicle locks and the alarm arms.

# Doors and Locks

## Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

**Note:** *The doors do not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.*

## Enabling or Disabling Autounlock

To enable or disable autounlock use the vehicle tile located in the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the instrument cluster display.*

## Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control.

The illuminated entry system turns off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- After 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights will not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open.

## Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You lock your vehicle from the outside.

## Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, interior lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver shuts them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

## Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Passive Key

If you leave the ignition on after leaving your vehicle, it turns off 30 minutes after you close all of the doors.

# Liftgate

## MANUAL LIFTGATE

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

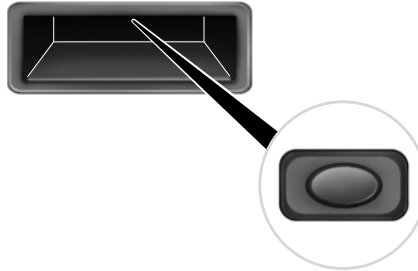
**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

### Opening with the Outside Control Button



Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate and then lift to open.

### Opening with the Remote Control (if Equipped)

**Note:** The button may vary depending on remote type.



Press the button to unlock the liftgate. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate using the outside control button.



### Closing the Liftgate



E291353

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.



# Liftgate

## POWER LIFTGATE (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

If there is a problem with the open or close request, a tone sounds for one of the following reasons:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The liftgate is not fully closed and your vehicle speed is at or above 5 km/h (3 mph).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible strut failure. A repetitive tone sounds and the liftgate closes under control. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate.

## Opening and Closing the Liftgate



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open when you are driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

# Liftgate

## Opening from the Instrument Panel



With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

## Opening with the Remote Control

**Note:** The button may vary depending on remote type.

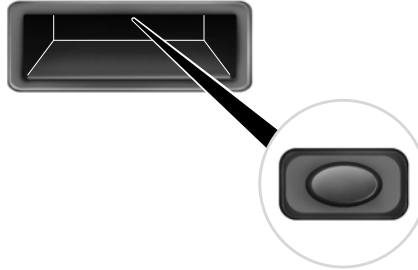


Press the button twice within three seconds.



## Opening with the Outside Control Button

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a passive key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



2. Press and release the liftgate control button.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

## Closing the Liftgate



**WARNING:** Keep clear of the liftgate when using the rear switch.



E291351

Press and release the liftgate button.

## Stopping the Liftgate Movement

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.

# Liftgate

- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.\*

\*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

## Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** *Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a tone, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

**Note:** *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

**Note:** *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than fully open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

## Obstacle Detection

**Note:** *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

## When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

## When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be accessed through the instrument cluster display.*

When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and does not power open or close.

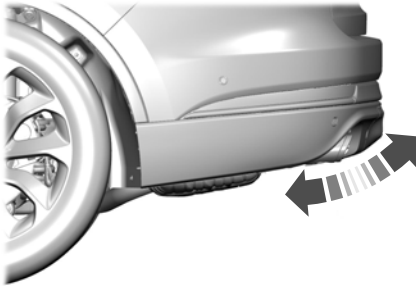
## Hands-Free Feature (If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.

# Liftgate

2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



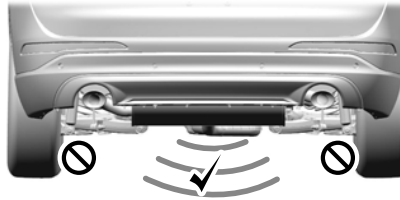
3. The liftgate opens or closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

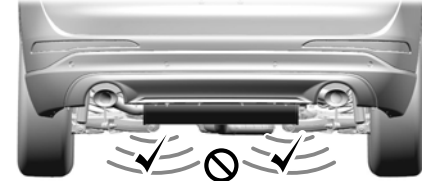
## Detection Zones

### Vehicles Without a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is in the center of the rear bumper.

### Vehicles With a Trailer Hitch



The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the hitch, between the exhaust and the hitch.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area when you wash your vehicle.

# Security

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

**Note:** *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

**Note:** *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle.*

## Arming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer arms after a short period of time when you switch the ignition off.

## Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

The engine immobilizer disarms when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY (IF EQUIPPED)

### Alarm System

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

## Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are located in the overhead console. Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

## Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

## Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.

# Security

- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher flashes for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** The alarm security level will switch back to full guard once the power is turned on.

## Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Advanced settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm system	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.

# Security

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 56).

## Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or by unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be within the detection range of that door.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR (IF EQUIPPED)

### Alarm System

**Note:** Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

## Interior Sensors

The interior lamp unit sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover the interior lamp scanning sensors.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

## Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

## Full and Reduced Guard

### Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

### Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** The alarm security level will switch back to full guard when the power is turned on.

### Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

### Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

# Security

## Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Alarm	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Ask on exit	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the <b>OK</b> button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

## Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Doors and Locks** (page 56).

## Disarming the Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on, or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

**Note:** *A valid remote control must be within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 56).*

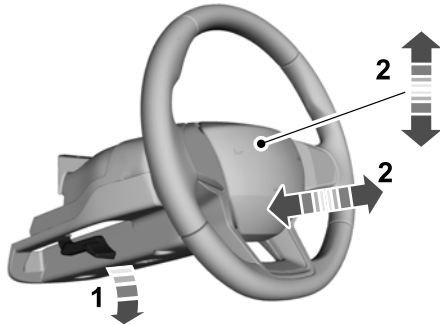


# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

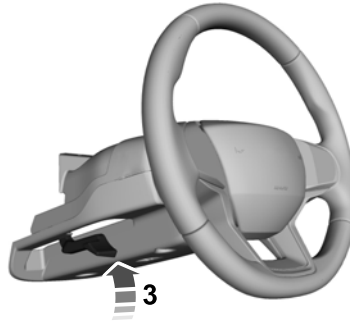
**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 170).



E279960

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E279962

3. Lock the steering column.

## AUDIO CONTROL



E280796



E280795

# Steering Wheel

## You can operate the following functions with the control:



Press to decrease volume level.



Press to increase volume level.



Press to silence the current media



Press to access phone mode or to answer a phone call.



Press to end a phone call.



Press to access the previous media selection.



Press to access the next media selection.

## VOICE CONTROL

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press and release to activate voice recognition.

## CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING



E289643

See **What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering** (page 274).

## CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



E280797

See **How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work** (page 274).

## Steering Wheel

### CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL



See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 272).

### INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL- VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD)



E280795

See **Information Displays** (page 111).

### INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD)



See **Information Displays** (page 111).

### HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

**Note:** You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

## Steering Wheel

---

**Note:** *The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.*

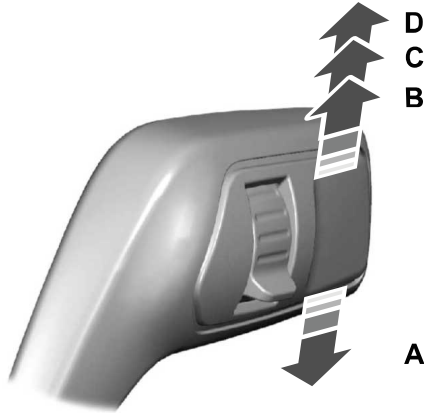
**Note:** *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

# Wipers and Washers

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

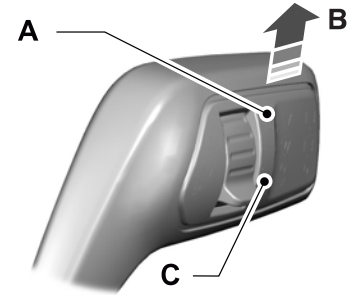
**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

## Intermittent Wipe



- A Shortest wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

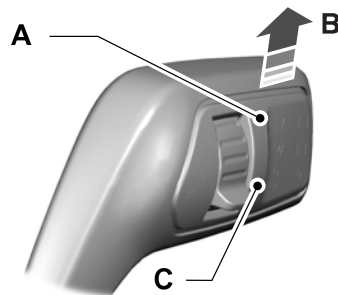
## Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

## Wipers and Washers

### AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.



- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers On.
- C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe.
- Switch autowipers off.

**Note:** Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

**Note:** Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

**Note:** If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.

**Note:** If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

### Autowipers Settings

Autowipers defaults to on and remains on until you switch it off in the information display. When you switch off autowipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

### WINDSHIELD WASHERS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



E242323



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers.

## Wipers and Washers

When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. When activated, a courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

**Note:** You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

### Front Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Operating the windshield washer also turns on the front camera washer.

### WINDSHIELD WASHERS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

You can switch courtesy wipe on or off in the information display.

**Note:** Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

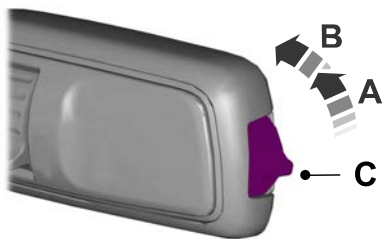
### Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Wipers**.
5. Switch **Courtesy wipe** on or off.

## Wipers and Washers

### REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

#### Rear Window Wiper



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

Depending on your vehicle, when you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), the rear intermittent wipe may turn on.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

#### Rear Window Washer



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

#### Rear Camera Washer (If Equipped)

Switching on the rear washer also turns on the rear camera washer.

### HEADLAMP WASHERS (IF EQUIPPED)

If you operate the windshield washers when the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers turn on.

**Note:** The headlamp washers do not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.



# Lighting

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

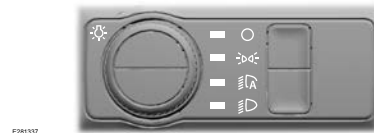
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting Control Selections



Turn the dial to make a selection.

**Note:** The indicator illuminates next to the active selection.



Lamps off.



Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and rear lamps.



Autolamps.



Headlamps on.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

### Switching High Beam Headlamps On and Off



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

# Lighting

## Flashing High Beam Headlamps



E248604

Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beam headlamps.

## AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the wipers operate.



Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the instrument cluster display or touchscreen to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

**Note:** If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.

## Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers:

- During a single wipe.
- When using the windshield washers.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

**Note:** If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.




## HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you again or switching the ignition on.

# Lighting

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS


 **WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.


The system turns the lamps on in daylight conditions.


To switch the system on, switch the lighting control to any position except headlamps.


## GLARE-FREE HIGH BEAM (IF


EQUIPPED)


 **WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

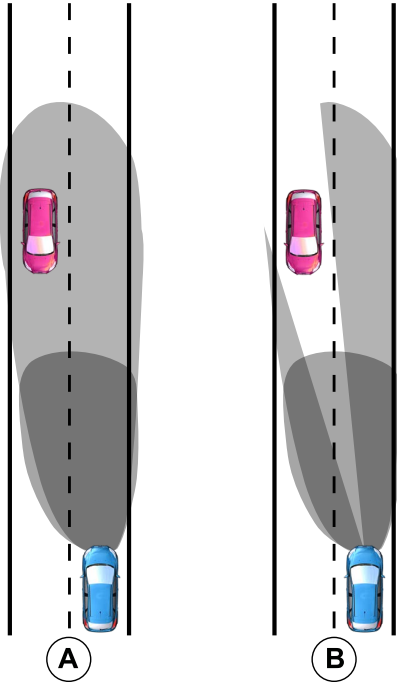
 **WARNING:** The system may not adapt the high beams to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

 **WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

## About Glare-Free High Beam

The system is designed to prevent you from distracting other road users when the high beams are on.

# Lighting



- A Normal High Beam.
- B Glare-Free High Beam.

The system is designed to turn the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that high beams are required.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

The system is designed to adapt the high beams to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.



The high beam headlamp indicator remains on when the system adapts the high beams to avoid glare.

The system is designed to turn the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off through your vehicle settings.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

**Note:** The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

## Switching Glare-Free High Beam On or Off

You can switch the system on or off through your vehicle settings.

Depending on your vehicle options, the vehicle settings may be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

# Lighting

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.

## Glare-Free High Beam Indicator



It illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## Overriding Glare-Free High Beam

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## REAR FOG LAMPS

### Switching the Rear Fog Lamps On or Off



**WARNING:** Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 m (164.0 ft).

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You switched the front fog lamps on.
- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

This vehicle is equipped with a dynamic automatic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

# Lighting

## HEADLAMP LEVELING - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams, do the following:



Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

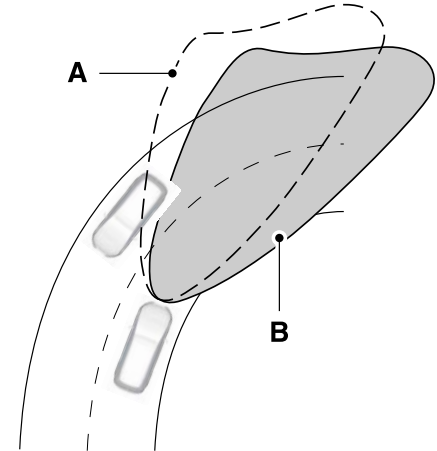
**Note:** Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

## ADAPTIVE HEADLAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

The headlamps are designed to adapt when you are steering around a curve, or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve or traffic signs indicating an intersection or a roundabout.

**Note:** Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use the adaptive headlamps.

## Steering Around a Curve

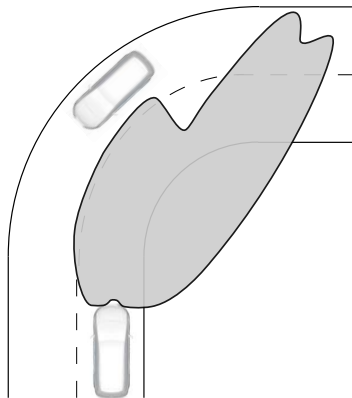


- A Without adaptive headlamps.
- B With adaptive headlamps.

# Lighting

## Camera Detects Lane Markings

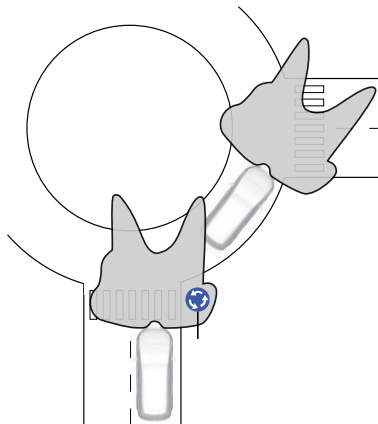
You can switch the feature off in the information display.



E267903

## Camera Detects Traffic Signs

You can switch the feature off in the information display.



E266972

The camera only detects traffic signs if your vehicle speed is below 50 km/h (31 mph).

# Lighting

## Adaptive Headlamps Settings

To switch the camera detection off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Settings	Press the menu button.
Vehicle settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Lighting	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Predictive lighting	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

## Adaptive Headlamps Information Messages

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Lighting

## DIRECTION INDICATORS

### Switching the Direction Indicators On and Off



Push the lever up or down to switch the direction indicators on.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the direction indicators off.

### Direction Indicator



Flashes when you switch the direction indicators on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Switching All of the Interior Lamps On



Fully press the button on the overhead console towards the icon.

### Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off

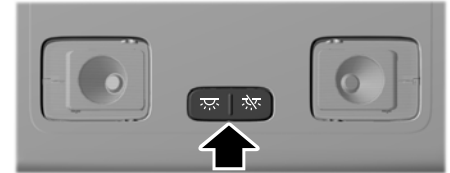


Fully press the button on the overhead console towards the icon.

### Interior Lamp Function

#### Switching the Interior Lamp Function On

The switch is on the overhead console.



Set the switch to the middle position.

When you switch the interior lamp function on, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

### Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off



E249791

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

# Lighting

## Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

**Note:** *If the rear lamps are switched on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.*

## AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

Use the touchscreen to select the following:



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select **Vehicle**.

Select **Ambient light**.



## Switching Ambient Lighting On

Drag the slider above zero brightness.

## Adjusting the Brightness

Drag the slider left or right.

## Switching Ambient Lighting Off

Drag the slider left to zero brightness.

## Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off. Low beams remain on.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

Use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Lighting**.

### Activating the Automatic High Beam Control



Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 78).

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.

When active, the high beams turn on if all the following conditions occur:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

When active, the high beams turn off if at least one of the following conditions occur:

- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- A blocked vehicle camera.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

**Note:** The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

**Note:** Certain curvy road situations may delay high beam reactivation.

**Note:** If you have a blocked sensor, the system may not operate properly. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.


**Note:** The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.


**Note:** If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. If you have a blocked camera, a message may appear in the information display.


**Note:** Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.

## Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

 **WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

 **WARNING:** Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.


1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Lighting**.
5. Switch **Auto highbeam** on or off.


### AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS




The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

### OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

 **WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

## Resetting One-Touch Up

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the window switch until you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window switch.
3. Press and hold the window switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window switch.
5. Lift and hold the window switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

## Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

## Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction.

## Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

## Resetting Bounce-Back



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.

# Windows and Mirrors

3. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift and hold the switch again for a few seconds.
6. Release the switch.
7. Press and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the switch.
10. Open the window and then try to close it using one-touch close.

**Note:** Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

## Accessory Delay

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

(IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the remote control to open and close the windows when the ignition is off.

You can switch this feature on and off through the touchscreen or information display, depending on your vehicle configuration. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Global Opening

To open the windows and vent the moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button.
3. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

**Note:** When you unlock your vehicle using the remote control, you can use global opening for a short period of time.

## Global Closing



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

To close the windows and moonroof, do the following:

1. Press and hold the remote control lock button.
2. Release the button when movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function.

**Note:** The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power Exterior Mirrors

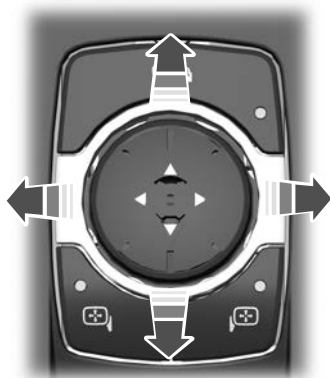


**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

# Windows and Mirrors



- A Left-hand mirror  
B Right-hand mirror



Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

## Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

## Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

The exterior mirrors fold in toward the glass after you place the transmission into park (P), turn off the vehicle, open and close the driver side door and lock the vehicle. The exterior mirrors unfold and return to their driving position after you unlock the vehicle and open and close the driver side door.

You can switch this feature on and off through the touchscreen or information display, depending on your vehicle configuration. See **General Information** (page 111).

You can fold the mirrors on demand by pressing the power-folding mirror control on the door. The control lights and the mirrors fold in toward the glass. Press the control again to unfold the mirrors. The control light turns off.

**Note:** If you use the power-folding control to fold the mirrors on demand with the auto fold feature on, you must use the control again to unfold them.

## Loose Mirror

If you manually fold your power-folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the power-fold feature, use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power-folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

## Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Exterior Mirrors** (page 165).

## Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function.

## Windows and Mirrors

### Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

### Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The lamps on the bottom part of the mirror housing light when you use your transmitter to unlock the doors or when you open a door.

### Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 300).

## INTERIOR MIRROR



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

### Manual Dimming Mirror

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce the effect of bright light from behind.

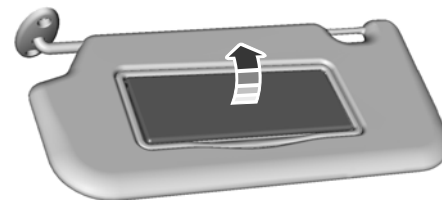
### Automatic Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

## SUN VISORS

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

### MOONROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



## Windows and Mirrors



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof and sunscreen controls are located on the overhead console.

The moonroof and sunscreen have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop them during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

### Opening and Closing the Moonroof



- A **Moonroof open.** Press and release to open the moonroof.
- B **Moonroof vent/close.** Press and release to vent or close the moonroof.

- C **Sunshade open.** Press and release to open the sunshade. The sunshade opens automatically with the moonroof. You can also open the sunshade with the moonroof closed.
- D **Sunshade close.** Press and release to close the sunshade.

**Note:** The sunshade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To open the sunshade fully, press the control again.

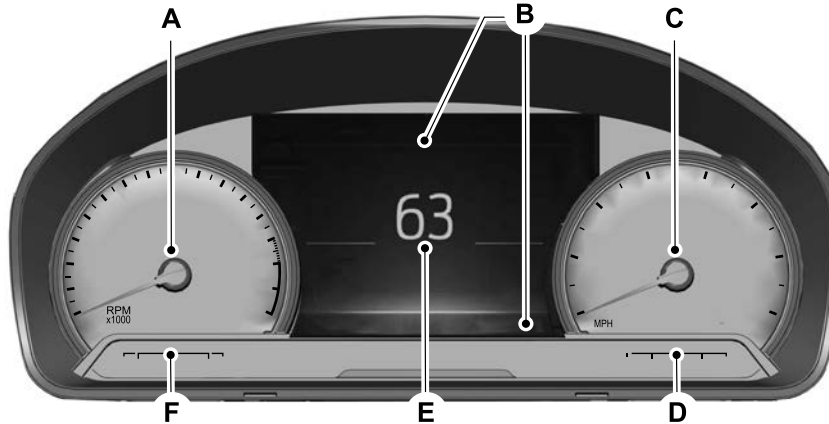
### Bounce-Back

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

## Instrument Cluster

### GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Tachometer.
- B Information bar.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Information display.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Information Bar

Displays information related to the navigation, outside air temperature, odometer and distance to empty.

## Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



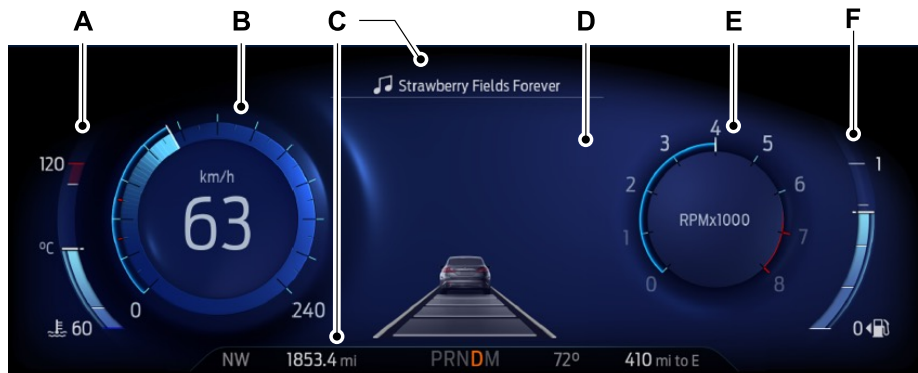
**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

## GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

**Note:** *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region or your personal settings.*

## Instrument Cluster



- A Coolant temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Information bar.
- D Information display.
- E Tachometer.
- F Fuel gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Information Bar

Displays information related to the current audio source, navigation, outside air temperature and distance to empty.

## Information Display

Information that appears depends on current gauge view and on-demand settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



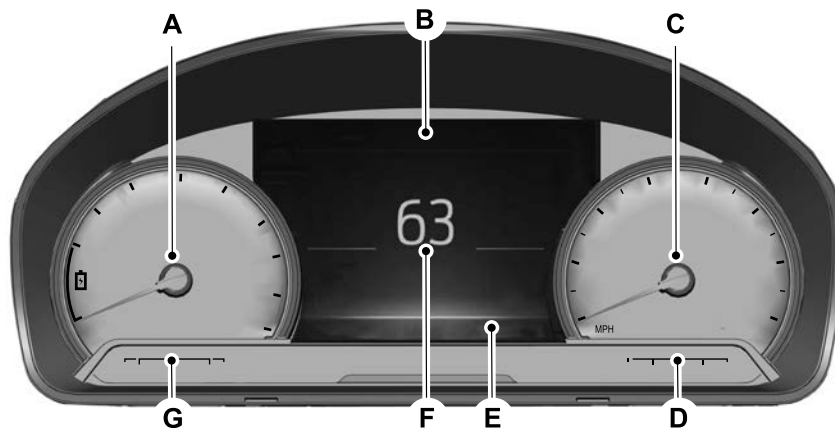
**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

## GAUGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

**Note:** *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region.*

## Instrument Cluster



- A Power gauge.
- B Information bar.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Battery gauge and vehicle driving range.
- F Information display.
- G Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Power Gauge

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

## Information Bar

Displays information related to the navigation, outside air temperature, odometer and distance to empty.

## Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

**Note:** The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

## Battery Gauge

The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge, plugging your vehicle in. When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system automatically switches to hybrid operation. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

## Vehicle Driving Range



Vehicle range indicates the estimated distance your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used while driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used while driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle speed.
- Use of accessories such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and other weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.

# Instrument Cluster

**Note:** *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This is why you typically see different range estimates each time you fill up your fuel tank or fully charge your battery.*

## Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

## Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

## Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

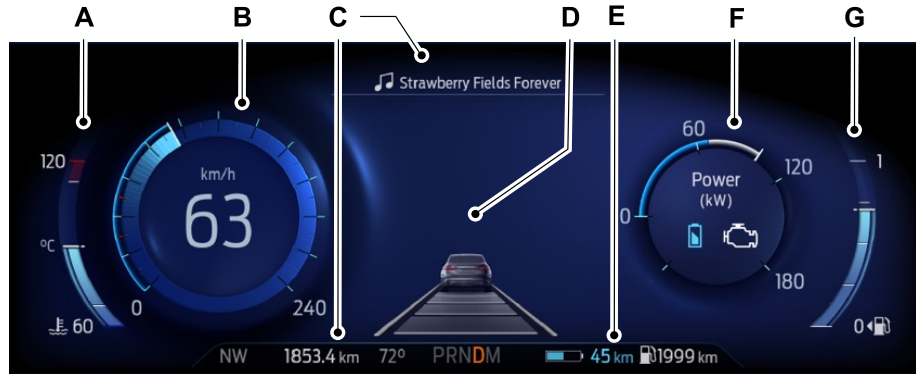
Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

## GAUGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

**Note:** *Displays may appear slightly different depending on region or your personal settings.*



## Instrument Cluster



- A Coolant temperature gauge.
- B Speedometer.
- C Information bar.
- D Information display.
- E Battery gauge and vehicle driving range.
- F Power gauge.
- G Fuel gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Information Bar

Displays information related to the current audio source, navigation, outside air temperature and distance to empty.

## Information Display

Information that appears depends on current gauge view and on-demand settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

## Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## Battery Gauge

The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge, plugging your vehicle in. When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system automatically switches to hybrid operation. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

## Vehicle Driving Range



Vehicle range indicates the estimated distance your vehicle will travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates will vary based on the energy used while driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

# Instrument Cluster

---

The amount of energy being used while driving is affected by:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle speed.
- Use of accessories such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and other weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.

**Note:** *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This is why you typically see different range estimates each time you fill up your fuel tank or fully charge your battery.*

## Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

## Electric Range

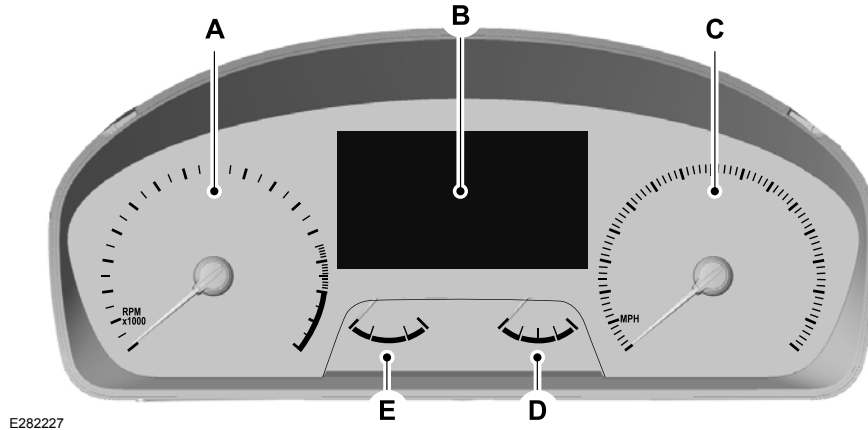
Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

## Power Gauge

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. The high voltage battery power and engine power contributions are distinguished by color and added together to indicate total power to the wheels. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery is displayed in green.

## Instrument Cluster

### GAUGES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



- A Tachometer.
- B Information display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## Information Display

Information that appears depends on your vehicle settings. See **General Information** (page 111).

## Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

**Note:** *The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.*

## Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km (75 mi) to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

**Note:** *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp, but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in.

Illuminates white when you switch on the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when the speed control system is turned off.

Illuminates green when you engage the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when you disengage the speed control system.

## Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a system error. You continue to have the normal braking (without ABS) unless the brake system warning lamp also illuminates. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

# Instrument Cluster

## Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)



Illuminates when this feature is on.

## Auto Hold Active



Illuminates when the system holds your vehicle stationary.

## Auto Hold Unavailable



Illuminates when the system is on, but unavailable to hold your vehicle stationary.

## Auto Start-stop (If Equipped)



Illuminates when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

## Battery



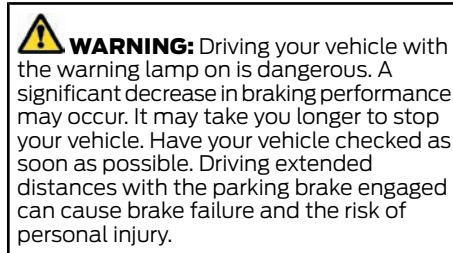
If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

## Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message.

## Brake System Warning Lamp



**Note:** Indicators vary depending on region.

This lamp is a dual function lamp and illuminates when:

- You apply the parking brake with the ignition on.
- Your vehicle has a brake fault or low brake fluid level, regardless of parking brake position.



If the lamp illuminates when you are moving, you may have the parking brake applied. Make sure the parking brake is off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if the lamp continues to illuminate.

## Cruise Control (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch this feature on.

## Direction Indicator



Illuminates when you switch on the left or right direction indicator or the hazard flasher. If they stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

# Instrument Cluster

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid (If Equipped)



It illuminates when the AdBlue level is low. If the AdBlue® level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction.

## Door Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

## Electric Park Brake

**Note:** Indicators vary depending on region.



Illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake has a system error. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 245).



## Engine or Motor Coolant Temperature



Illuminates when your vehicle coolant temperature is high. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible, switch off your vehicle and let it cool. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).

## Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a system error. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).

**Note:** Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system immediately checked.

## EV Charge (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch on this feature. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

## EV Later (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch on this feature. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

## EV Now (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch on this feature. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

## Fasten Seatbelt



Illuminates and a tone sounds to remind you to fasten your seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 32).

## Fasten Rear Seatbelt (If Equipped)



Illuminates and a tone sounds to signal the rear seatbelts are not fastened.

## Front Airbag



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Frost Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C (39°F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is 4°C (39°F) or below.

## Glow Plug Indicator (If Equipped)



With the key in the on position, it illuminates when the glow plug heat is necessary as a starting aid. Wait until it goes off before starting.

After you start the engine, the indicator should turn off. When the engine is cold, the indicator should always illuminate for a short period.

## High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It flashes when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Hood Ajar



Illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

## Liftgate Ajar



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Warning



Illuminates when the low beam headlamp bulb is not functioning properly.

## Low Fuel Level



Illuminates when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



Illuminates when the tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check the tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Low Washer Fluid



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system. If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



# Instrument Cluster

## Powertrain Fault



Illuminates when the system detects a powertrain or a 4WD/AWD fault. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Ready to Drive (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you have switched on your vehicle and it is ready to drive. A corresponding message may appear stating ready to drive.

## Rear Fog Lamps



Illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Shift Indicator (If Equipped)



Illuminates to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It does not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal

is pressed.



## Stability Control



It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system immediately checked. See **Using Stability Control** (page 255).

## Stability Control Off



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 255).

## Stop Safely Now (If Equipped)



Illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that will cause your vehicle to shutdown or enter into a limited operating mode. You may also see a message.

## Vehicle Plugged in (If Equipped)



Illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in. A corresponding message may display after attempting to start your vehicle.

## Water-In-Fuel (If Equipped)



Illuminates when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Immediately drain off the water.

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Keyless Warning Alert

The horn will sound twice when you exit your vehicle with the passive key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn will also sound twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually while the passive key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the passive key remains in the vehicle.

## Instrument Cluster

---

### **Headlamps On Warning Chime**

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

## Information Displays

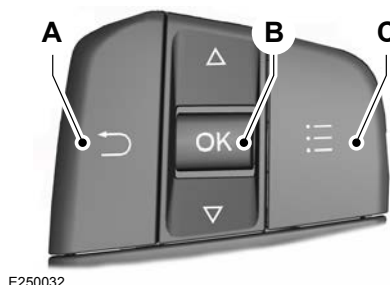
### GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

#### Information Display Controls



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

#### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

#### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

#### Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

#### Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

**Note:** Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.

**Note:** Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.

# Information Displays

## Trip Menu

Trip Menu	
Trip computer 1	
Trip computer 2	
Reset individual values	Select Your Setting
Configure view	Select Your Setting

- Trip Odometer - Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys or the total distance since the function was last reset.
- Trip Timer - Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption of individual journeys or the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed of individual journeys or the average vehicle speed since the function was last reset.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.

# Information Displays

## MyView

MyView	
Digital speedometer	
Fuel economy	
Trip computer/audio	
Eco coach	
Calm screen	

## Driver Assistance

Driver assist.	
Eco coach	Select Your Setting

## Navigation

Navigation	
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Navigation</b> (page 467).	

# Information Displays

## Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).

## Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Phone</b> (page 465).

## Settings

Settings		
Information	Contains vehicle status information. Select Your Setting.	
Display	Language	Select Your Setting
	Measure unit	
	Temperature unit	
	Tyre pressure	
Driver assistance	Select Your Setting	
Vehicle maintenance	Oil life	Select Your Setting

## Information Displays

Settings		
	Tyre pressure	
MyKey	MyKey info	
	Create MyKey	

**Note:** Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

### GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 2.5

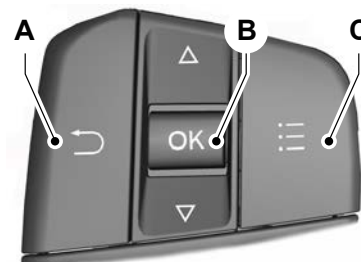


**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the quick action menu (QAM) buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

### Information Display Controls



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

# Information Displays

## OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

## Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

## Trip Menu

## 4 Inch Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

**Note:** Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.

**Note:** Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.

Trip Menu	
Trip computer 1	
Trip computer 2	
Reset individual values	Select Your Setting
Configure view	Select Your Setting

- Trip Odometer - Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys or the total distance since the function was last reset.
- Trip Timer - Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption of individual journeys or the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed of individual journeys or the average vehicle speed since the function was last reset.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.



## Information Displays

### MyView

MyView	
Digital speedometer	
Fuel economy	
Trip computer/audio	
Eco coach	
Calm screen	

### Driver Assistance

Trip Menu	
Traction control	
Hill descent control	
BLIS	Select Your Setting
Pre-collision Assist	Select Your Setting
Traffic sign recognition	Select Your Setting
Lane keeping system	Select Your Setting
Driver alert	
Wrong way alert	

## Information Displays

Trip Menu	
Grade assist	
Hill Start Assist	
Cross Traffic Alert	
Eco coach	Select Your Setting
Trailer control	
Cruise control	Select Your Setting
Speed limiter	Select Your Setting
Rear Park Pilot	

- Trip Odometer - Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys or the total distance since the function was last reset.
- Trip Timer - Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.
- Average Fuel - Indicates the average fuel consumption of individual journeys or the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.
- Average Speed - Indicates the average vehicle speed of individual journeys or the average vehicle speed since the function was last reset.
- Distance to Empty - Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.

# Information Displays

## Navigation

Navigation
Home
Favourite destinations
Previous destinations

## Audio

Audio
Radio
CD

## Phone

Phone
All calls
Incoming calls
Missed calls
Outgoing calls

# Information Displays

## Settings

Settings		
Information	Contains vehicle status information. Select Your Setting.	
Display	Language	Select Your Setting
	Measurement unit	
	Temperature unit	
	Tyre pressure	
Driver assistance	Select Your Setting	
Vehicle settings	Select Your Setting	
Vehicle maintenance	Oil life	Select Your Setting
	Tyre pressure	
MyKey	MyKey info	
	Create MyKey	

## Information Displays

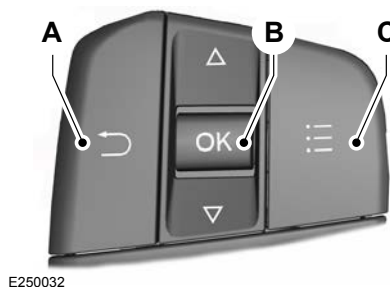
### GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 3



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

#### Information Display Controls



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

#### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

#### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.

#### Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

#### Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

**Note:** Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.

**Note:** Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.

#### Select Screens

##### Select Screens

Menu options covered in personalized settings. See **Personalized Settings** (page 127).

# Information Displays

---

## Navigation

Navigation
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Navigation</b> (page 467).

## Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).

## Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Phone</b> (page 465).

# Information Displays

## Settings

Settings	
Brake coach	
Oil life	Percent Oil Life Indication XXX% Hold Ok to Reset
Tyre pressure monitor	Hold Ok to Reset
Neutral towing	Hold Ok to Initialize

**Note:** Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

## Display Setup

Display Setup	
Speedometer Units	
Driving History <sup>1</sup>	Hold <b>OK</b> to Reset

<sup>1</sup>Hybrid only

**Note:** Additional display settings are available through your touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

## Hybrid Display Information (If Equipped)

Displays unique hybrid vehicle information when you shut off your vehicle or come to a stop.

## Information Displays

### Brake Coach

The Brake Coach appears after the vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery. Brake Coach can be turned on or off in the settings menu.

### Trip Summary

Displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip on demand screen. See

**Personalized Settings** (page 127).

### Vehicle Charging Status

Displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle while plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings through the touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).

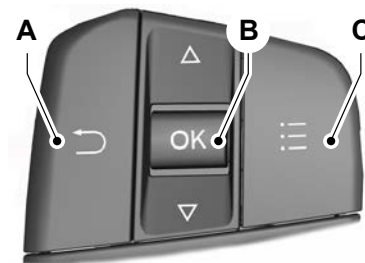
### GENERAL INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN/SYNC 3



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel. The information display provides the corresponding information.

### Information Display Controls



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Use the return button to go back or to exit.

### OK Button

Use the **OK** button to make a selection. You can also use it to scroll through a menu.



# Information Displays

## Menu Button

Use the menu button on the main screen to display the submenu.

## Display Menu



This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

**Note:** Some options may appear different or not at all if the items are optional.

**Note:** Some MyKey menu options only appear if MyKey is enabled and at least one MyKey is programmed.

## Select Screens

Select Screens
Menu options covered in personalized settings. See <b>Personalized Settings</b> (page 127).

## Navigation

Navigation
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Navigation</b> (page 467).

## Audio

Audio
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).

# Information Displays

## Phone

Phone
Menu options covered in the SYNC chapter. See <b>Phone</b> (page 465).

## Settings

Settings	
Brake coach	
Oil life	Percent Oil Life Indication XXX% Hold Ok to Reset
Tyre pressure monitor	Hold Ok to Reset
Neutral towing	Hold Ok to Initialize

**Note:** Additional vehicle settings are available through your touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

# Information Displays

## Display Setup

Display Setup	
Show tachometer	
Show Power Gauge <sup>1</sup>	
Speedometer Units	
Eco coach	Select Your Setting
Driving History <sup>1</sup>	Hold <b>OK</b> to Reset

<sup>1</sup>Hybrid only

**Note:** Additional display settings are available through your touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

### Hybrid Display Information (If Equipped)

Displays unique hybrid vehicle information when you shut off your vehicle or come to a stop.

#### Brake Coach

The Brake Coach appears after the vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovery. Brake Coach can be turned on or off in the settings menu.

#### Trip Summary

Displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip on demand screen. See **Personalized Settings** (page 127).

### Vehicle Charging Status

Displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle while plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your vehicle charge settings through the touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).

### PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

Select one of these options to display on your main screen.

# Information Displays

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

**Note:** EV Now information is only available when in EV Now mode.

Select Screens
Calm screen
Fuel economy
Trip computer 1
Trip computer 2
This Trip <sup>2</sup>
EV Coach <sup>2</sup>
Electric Efficiency <sup>2</sup>
Eco coach
Tyre pressure
Intelligent 4WD
Off road
Trailer light check
Seatbelts
Auto StartStop

## Information Displays

Select Screens
Now Playing <sup>1</sup>
EV Now <sup>2</sup>
Exhaust Filter Status <sup>3</sup>
AdBlue Info <sup>3</sup>
AdBlue Range <sup>3</sup>
AdBlue Minimum Refill <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 6 inch display only

<sup>2</sup> Hybrid only

<sup>3</sup> Diesel only

**Note:** Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your trip information.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.

**Note:** Some features offer more information when you select them.

### Fuel Economy

An Instant Fuel Economy gauge is provided along with Average Fuel Economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Hybrid features:

- When the gasoline engine is off the instant fuel economy gauge is replaced with a electric driving message.
- For Plug-in vehicles, both electric only and hybrid operation are included in the calculation. More electric only driving will result in greater average fuel economy.

**Note:** Hold **OK** to reset fuel history and average fuel economy.

### Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only.

# Information Displays

## Hybrid Information (If Equipped)

### This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip automatically resets each time you start your vehicle.

### EV Coach

EV Coach can help you to get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving and regenerative braking capabilities.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you will see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine will turn on.

- When your power level is within the box the color of the bar will be blue. This means you are in Electric operation and the engine is off.
- When your power level is outside of the box the color of the bar will be white. This means you are in Hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal you will see a green or white solid bar indicating the power being used to slow down the vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When your power level is completely within the box the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow the vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When your power level is outside of the green box then the bar will be white. This means that both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

## Electric Efficiency

**Note:** *This feature applies to Plug-in vehicles only.*

This screen shows your average driving distance per kWh of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric efficiency, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric efficiency is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best efficiency is achieved in mild ambient temperatures with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

## INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** *Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened.*

## Information Displays



E222314

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. The system removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

### Active Park (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Active Park malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise malfunction	A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front sensor not aligned	
Adaptive cruise not available	Conditions exist such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly.
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar is blocked because of poor radar visibility due to bad weather or ice/mud/water in front of radar. Driver can typically clean the sensor to resolve.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	Displayed when the automatic braking has been disabled.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	Displayed when the adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.

### Adaptive Headlamps (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Check adaptive headlamps See manual	Displays when a system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Adaptive Steering (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Adaptive steering Initialisation	The adaptive steering system detects a difference between steering wheel angle and the desired road wheel angle. The steering wheel adjusts itself to correct this difference. This adjustment is part of normal system operation.
Adaptive steering malfunction Service required	The adaptive steering system is off. It is possible that the steering wheel may not be straight when you drive the vehicle straight ahead. If this message persists, see an authorized dealer.
Adaptive steering loss Do not drive	The adaptive steering system integrity cannot be verified. Do not drive the vehicle and contact an authorized dealer immediately.



## Information Displays

### AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
ESC off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
ESC on	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
ESC off in 4x4 low	The system is off while the vehicle is in 4x4 low.
ESC Sport mode	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

### Alarm

Message	Action
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See <b>Anti-Theft Alarm</b> (page 65).

## Information Displays

### **AWD (If Equipped)**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
AWD temporarily disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD temporarily locked	The all-wheel drive system is locking up the torque transfer clutch to help reduce clutch temperature.
AWD off	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD malfunction Service required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
Change AWD power transfer unit lube	Displayed when the transfer case fluid requires service.
AWD power transfer unit lube set to new	Displayed when the transfer case fluid has been changed and reset to new.

## Information Displays

### Battery and Charging System (12 volt)

Message	Action
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

### Battery and Charging System (High Voltage) (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation it is unplugged before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
EV now All electric driving	You selected EV Now mode with the EV button.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
EV later {###}% electric energy saved for later	You selected EV Later mode with the EV button.
EV charge Battery charged by engine	You selected EV Charge mode with the EV button.
Auto EV normal operation	You selected Auto EV mode with the EV button.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Press EV button for full defrost	For full defrost heat press the EV button to select either EV Later or EV Auto. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In neutral depletes HV battery. Shift out of neutral for full vehicle function.	Displays when in neutral gear with the vehicle on. Shift out of neutral to maintain full vehicle function.

### Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System (If Equipped)

Message	Action
BLIS malfunction	A system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	The system sensors are blocked. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 300).
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See <b>Cross Traffic Alert</b> (page 303).

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Cross traffic system malfunction	A system error has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the information display. See <b>Cross Traffic Alert</b> (page 303).
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the information display. See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 300).

### Diesel Engine (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Engine warming Please wait {seconds:00} seconds	In extremely cold weather, typically below -26°C (-15°F) and if the engine block heater is not utilized, your engine will not respond to accelerator pedal movement for 30 seconds. This restriction allows your engine to circulate the oil properly in order to avoid engine damage.
Water in fuel Drain filter	The water separator has reached a predetermined capacity and needs draining.
Fuel pressure low	A low fuel pressure condition has occurred due to cold, low fuel level or fuel filters need to be changed.
Engine oil level low Add oil	A low oil level condition has occurred with the oil minder system. Check your engine oil level. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	Drive the vehicle for 20 minutes with an average speed of 60 km/h (37 mph). The message changes to Exhaust Filter Cleaning then clears itself under suitable driving conditions. If illuminated, the service engine soon light turns off following the third key cycle.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	Exhaust filter is overloaded. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Ready to drive	Engine is warmed up and your vehicle is ready to be driven.

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (If Equipped)

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon	AdBlue fluid is running low and should be refilled.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km	Engine will not start soon due to low AdBlue fluid level.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	AdBlue fluid is empty and must be refilled before engine can be started.
AdBlue® level empty Min refill {liters:#0.0} l	AdBlue fluid is empty and must be refilled a minimum amount before engine can be started.
AdBlue® level Min refill {liters:#0.0} l	AdBlue fluid is low and should be refilled a minimum amount to avoid an engine stop situation.
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	There is a fault in the AdBlue system. See authorized dealer.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km	There is a fault in the AdBlue system that will prevent the engine from starting. See authorized dealer.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	There is a fault in the AdBlue system that is preventing the engine from starting. See authorized dealer.
Incorrect AdBlue® Service required	Incorrect AdBlue fluid has been put into AdBlue tank. See authorized dealer.
Stop safely now	AdBlue fluid has run out and vehicle should be stopped before engine is shut off.

## Doors and Locks

Message	Action
Driver door open	The driver door is not completely closed.
Passenger door open	The passenger door is not completely closed.
Rear left door open	The rear left door is not completely closed.
Rear right door open	The rear right door is not completely closed.
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed.
Bonnet open	The hood is not completely closed.
Child lock malfunction Service required	There is a system malfunction with the child locks. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Child lock on	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched off, preventing rear seat occupants from opening the doors or windows.
Child lock off	Indicates that the rear seat interior door release switches and power windows are switched on.
Factory keypad code {factory keypad code: # # # # #}	The factory keypad code displays in the information display after the system resets the keypad. See <b>Passive Anti-Theft System</b> (page 65).

### Driver Alert

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

### Fuel

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check fuel fill inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	Wait for up to 15 seconds while the fuel system depressurizes.



## Information Displays

Message	Action
Fuel door open	The fuel system has finished depressurizing and you can begin to refuel.
Fuel door open Close fully to avoid ""Check Engine"" light	A reminder to close the fuel door. Failure to follow this instruction can cause the check engine light to illuminate.
Refuel error See manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

### Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Hill Start Assist</b> (page 250).

### Keys and Remote Control

Message	Action
Press brake to start	A reminder to press the brake while starting your vehicle.
No key detected	The system does not detect the key. See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 182).
Restart now or key is needed	The Start Stop button is pressed to shut off the engine and a remote control is not detected inside your vehicle.
Full accessory power active	Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.
Starting system malfunction	There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.
Key program successful	Displays during spare key programming when a key is programmed to the system.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Maximum number of keys learned	Displays during spare key programming when the maximum number of keys have been programmed.
Key program failure	Displays during spare key programming when a key fails to be programmed.
Not enough keys learned	Displayed during spare key programming when there are not enough keys programmed.
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.
Vehicle switched off	Displays when the vehicle is switched off.

### Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires the windshield to be cleaned to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests the driver to keep their hands on the steering wheel.

## Information Displays

### Maintenance

Message	Action
Engine oil pressure low	Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Change engine oil soon	The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.
Oil change required	The oil life left reaches 0%.
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See <b>Brake Fluid Check</b> (page 378).
Service required	Indicates that your vehicle has reached the estimated time or distance for the scheduled maintenance. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check brake system	The brake system needs servicing. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Engine coolant overtemperature	The engine coolant temperature is excessively high.
Washer fluid level low	The washer fluid is low and needs to be refilled.
Transport mode Contact dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Factory mode Contact dealer	Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
See manual	Informs the driver that the powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	The engine has reduced power to help reduce high engine temperature.
Brake applied Power reduced	The brake system has reduced stopping power.
Engine on due to low use Normal operation	EV functionality is disabled and the engine is running to maintain oil quality. See <b>Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation</b> (page 197).

### MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey not created	You cannot program a MyKey.
MyKey active Drive safely	MyKey is active.
Speed limited to {my key limit XXXX} mph	When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.
Speed limited to {my key limit XXXX} km/h	
Vehicle near top speed	MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 130 km/h (81 mph).
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.
Check speed Drive safely	You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.
Buckle up to unmute audio	Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.
MyKey ESC on	With a MyKey in use, AdvanceTrac turns on.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
MyKey Traction control on	With a MyKey in use, traction control turns on.
MyKey Park Pilot cannot be deactivated	With a MyKey in use, park aid is always on.
MyKey Lane keeping alert on	With a MyKey in use, lane keeping alert turns on.

### Park Aid

Message	Action
Check front Park Pilot	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Rear Park Pilot not available Sensor blocked See manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See <b>Rear Parking Aid</b> (page 256).
Front Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See <b>Front Parking Aid</b> (page 258).
Park Pilot not available sensor blocked See Manual	The radar is blocked due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See <b>Principle of Operation</b> (page 256).
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

## Information Displays

### Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	The parking brake is set, the engine is running and you drive your vehicle more than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Park brake Press brake and switch to release	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph). Release park brake before continued driving.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park brake Maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the rear brakes. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park brake System overheated	Numerous park brake applies have overheated the system. Wait 2 minutes before attempting to apply again.

## Information Displays

### Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.

### Pre-Collision Assist

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-collision assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Information Displays

### Seats

Message	Action
Occupant sensor blocked Remove objects near passenger seat	Objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Memory recall not permitted while driving	Displays as a reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.
Memory {0} saved	Displays to show where your memory setting has been saved.

### Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays when the starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start the vehicle.
Engine start pending Please wait	Displays when the starter is attempting to start the vehicle.
Pending start cancelled	Displays when the pending start has been cancelled.



## Information Displays

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	One or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 399).
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 399).
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 399). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Trailer (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Trailer connected	A correct trailer connection is sensed during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer disconnected	A trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer sway Reduce speed	The trailer sway control has detected trailer sway.
Wiring malfunction on trailer	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. See <b>Towing a Trailer</b> (page 331).
Trailer left indicator lights malfunction Check lights	There is a fault with your trailer turn lamp. Check your lamp.

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Trailer right indicator lights malfunction Check lights	There is a fault with your trailer turn lamp. Check your lamp.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery. See <b>Towing a Trailer</b> (page 331).
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	There is a fault with your vehicle trailer lighting module. See <b>Towing a Trailer</b> (page 331).

### Transmission

Message	Action
Shift to Park	Displays when you switch the engine off and the transmission is not in park (P). Shift into park (P).
Transmission warming up Please wait	Transmission is too cold. Wait for it to warm up before you drive.
Press brake pedal	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed.
Transmission overtemperature Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Service required	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission too hot Press brake	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. See an authorized dealer.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typical after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode. See <b>Changing the 12V Battery</b> (page 379).

## Information Displays

Message	Action
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Service required	See your authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Vehicle is shifting to Park	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to park. See your authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Reverse not available Service Required	Displays when there is a system fault while the vehicle is shifting to reverse. See your authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Drive not available Select S for drive Service required	See an authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Neutral not available Service required	See your authorized dealer.
Shift malfunction Sport not available Service required	See your authorized dealer.
Invalid gear selection	Displays when an invalid gear has been selected.
Depress brake to shift from Park	Displays when the brake pedal needs to be depressed to enable the transmission to shift from park.
Neutral tow engaged Turn ignition off for towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition while in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress brake and select Park to exit Neutral tow	Displays when neutral hold is active and you want to exit neutral tow.

# Information Displays

Message	Action
Neutral tow Remove park brake for towing	Reminder to remove park brake while in neutral tow.
Neutral tow disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral tow enabled Leave transmission in neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

## HEAD UP DISPLAY (IF EQUIPPED)



E261230

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different, or not at all, if the items are optional.

**Note:** Do not place anything on the head up display, for example sunglasses or a cell phone. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Cleaning the Head Up Display

Use a damp, lint-free cloth to clean the head up display.

**Note:** Do not touch the display screen or mirror.

**Note:** Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Switching the Head Up Display On or Off



Press the button on the steering wheel or center console.

**Note:** The head up display menu appears in the information display.

# Information Displays

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Head-up display (HUD)	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start the engine.

## Adjusting the Head Up Display Settings

Start the engine and switch the system on.

**Note:** Press the head up display button if you do not see the head up display menu in the information display.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. The system limits their use to when your vehicle is not moving.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to adjust the head up display settings.

## Information Displays

Menu Item	Action
Adjustment	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Position	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical position of the blue frame.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure that you can see all of the blue frame.</li><li>• Do not physically move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.</li></ul></li></ol>
Brightness	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the brightness of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The system adjusts the brightness based on how dark it is. If you set the brightness to a high level, the system reduces the brightness at night.</li></ul></li></ol>
Vertical size	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button.</li><li>2. Use the up and down toggle buttons to adjust the vertical size of the display screen.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A small vertical size could be more suitable if you sit in a high position.</li></ul></li></ol>

### Selecting Which Information the System Displays

Start the engine and switch the system on.

**Note:** *Press the head up display button if you do not see the head up display menu in the information display.*

**Note:** *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. The system limits their use to when your vehicle is not moving.*

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select which information the system displays.

# Information Displays

Menu Item	Action
Content	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Distance indication	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Eco advice	
Incoming calls	
Lane keeping system	
Navigation	
Speed assistance	
Speed sign recognition	

## Head Up Display Indicator



**Note:** The head up display indicator could illuminate to supplement an information message.

# Information Displays

## Head Up Display Information Messages

Message	Action
Heads-up display System malfunction See manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head-up display To position use the information display	Press the button on the steering wheel or center console. The head up display menu appears in the information display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Information messages only appear in the information display.



# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and therefore to heat or cool the interior to a predetermined temperature.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work if:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Remote start is not enabled.
- The ignition is on.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Activate remote start** On.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **What Is a Connected Vehicle** (page 439).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signal lamps flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass App to switch the vehicle off.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

# Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

## Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate control**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Last settings**.

**Note:** If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

**Note:** If you select **Last settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

### Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.

3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

## Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.

# Climate Control

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

### Directing the Airflow



Press and release the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



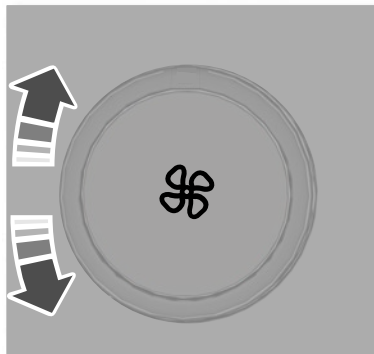
Press and release the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.



Press and release the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

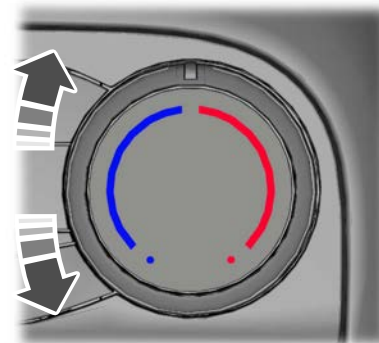
You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

### Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

### Setting the Temperature



Turn the control to set the temperature.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button to switch the air conditioning on or off.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

# Climate Control

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example, maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

## Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Press and release the button.

## Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting for maximum cooling.

The left-hand and right-hand settings set to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

## Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Turn the temperature control clockwise to the highest setting for maximum defrosting.

The left-hand and right-hand settings set to HI, air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

## Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



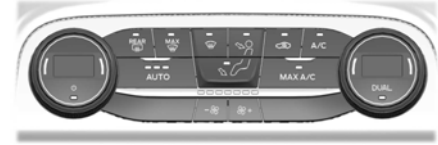
Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with A/C, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

(IF EQUIPPED)



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

**Note:** For Hybrid vehicles, the air conditioning compressor may run and airflow may be felt when the climate control is off to provide cooling to the battery.

## Directing the Airflow



Press and release the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.



Press and release the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.

# Climate Control



Press and release the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

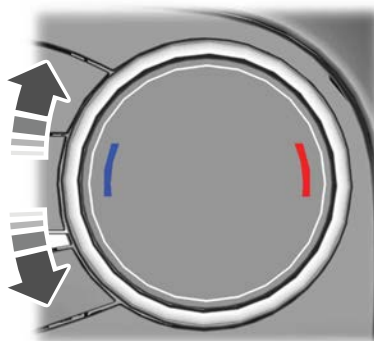
You can direct air through any combination of these air vents.

## Setting the Blower Motor Speed



Press and release + or - to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

## Setting the Temperature



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

## Switching Auto Mode On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on automatic operation. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Adjust the blower motor control to turn auto mode off.

# Climate Control

## Auto Mode Indicator Status

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is reduced.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor.</li><li>• This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.</li></ul></li></ul>
Two indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is moderate.</li></ul>
Three indicators illuminated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The blower motor speed is increased.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.</li><li>• Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button to switch the air conditioning on or off.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

**Note:** In certain conditions, for example, maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

## Switching the Climate Control On and Off



Press and release the button.

**Note:** The button may be on the temperature control.

## Switching Dual Zone Mode On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on temperature control for the right-hand side of the vehicle.

**Note:** The button may be on the temperature control.

## Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off



Press and release the button for maximum cooling.

The system sets the left-hand and right-hand settings to LO, recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

# Climate Control

## Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off



Press and release the button to switch on maximum defrost.

The system sets the left-hand and right-hand settings to HI, air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

## Switching Recirculated Air On and Off



Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with A/C, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

**Note:** Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

**Note:** You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

**Note:** To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

**Note:** Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

**Note:** Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

**Note:** To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

**Note:** Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.

**Note:** The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.

**Note:** For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

**Note:** If you select **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press and release **AUTO**.

# Climate Control

2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press and release **MAX A/C**.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press and release **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

**Note:** *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

**Note:** *You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.*

**Note:** *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

**Note:** *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

**Note:** *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

**Note:** *To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

## Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

## Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Select **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.



# Climate Control

## Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Place your vehicle in park (P) or neutral.
3. Select **MAX A/C**.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the lowest speed setting.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release **A/C**.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

## HEATED WINDSHIELD (IF EQUIPPED)



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated windshield on.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

## HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** Make sure the engine is on before operating the heated windows.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS (IF EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

**Note:** Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

## AUXILIARY HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to reduce the time needed to heat the engine when it is running. It turns on or off depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

### Using the Auxiliary Heater



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Climate Control



**WARNING:** Do not use the auxiliary heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the left-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.

**Note:** When the system is on, exhaust fumes come from under your vehicle. This is normal.

**Note:** If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

## Switching the Auxiliary Heater On and Off

1. Select **Settings** on the touchscreen.

## Parking Heater Information Messages

Message	Action
Park heater not started Low fuel level	Displays if the parking heater fails to operate due to low fuel level. Refuel as soon as possible.

2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Aux heater** on or off.

## Parking Heater

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to provide heat when your vehicle is parked.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

**Note:** Make sure the heater exhaust outlet, behind the left-hand front tire, is free from snow, ice, mud and any other blockages to avoid issues with the heater operation.

### Using the Parking Heater



**WARNING:** We recommend that you have a qualified technician check and repair the heater system after a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The system does not operate if the battery charge level is low.

The system only operates when your vehicle is stationary with the engine off.

When you correctly use the system it:

- Keeps the windows clear of thin ice and helps prevent condensation.
- Assists the engine to reach normal operating temperature sooner.

**Note:** If the heater is in the process of stopping, excess fuel in the heater burns out and there is some heat, exhaust and noise.

# Climate Control

## Switching Continue Heat On or Off

When you switch the ignition off, the heater starts or continues running if conditions permit for up to 30 minutes.

**Note:** You can use this mode to maintain a warm cabin after you switch the ignition off. After the heater completes this mode, the check box in the touchscreen resets to unchecked.

1. Select **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Park heater**.
4. Switch **Continue heat** on or off.

## Setting the Timer

The system has three different modes, that you can set in the touchscreen.

Timer Mode	Description
Single Time	Allows you to set one heating cycle for a specific day. If conditions permit, the heater starts up to 40 minutes prior to the set date and time. <sup>1</sup>
Recurring Time One	Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.
Recurring Time Two	Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. The time remains stored and the system warms up your vehicle prior to the programmed departure times.

<sup>1</sup> You must set the day and time for this mode before you check the box in the touchscreen.

**Note:** The time and date on your vehicle clock must be correctly set.

## Setting a Timer Mode

1. Select **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Park heater**.
4. Select **Heater programming**.

5. Switch **Activate** on or off.
6. Select **Once**.
7. Select the date and time you prefer, then select **Activate**.
8. Select **Time one**.
9. Select the day and time you prefer, then select **Activate**.
10. Select **Time two**.

11. Select the day and time you prefer, then select **Activate**.

## Switching the Parking Heater On and Off With the Remote Control

The parking heater transmitter allows you to remotely request the heater to start and run for up to 30 minutes or to stop all heater modes.

# Climate Control

**Note:** Up to three transmitters can be paired to your vehicle.

**Note:** The LED light on the remote transmitter does not indicate the actual status of the heater. The light does not guarantee the heater received a signal to start or stop.

**Note:** Electronic devices that operate in the same frequency may affect the range of the transmitter.

Press and hold the **ON** or **HEAT** button on the transmitter until a green LED light illuminates on the transmitter.

Press and hold the **OFF** button on the transmitter until a red LED light illuminates on the transmitter. This applies only for the heater mode running at the present time, so future timer settings or future continue heat settings do not disable.

The following table lists the parking heater remote control indications.

Transmitter LED	Description
Green	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing green	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.
Red	The transmitter sent a radio signal.
Flashing red	The transmitter sent a radio signal, but the heater did not receive the signal.

# Interior Air Quality

---

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

## LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER




Replace the filter at regular intervals.

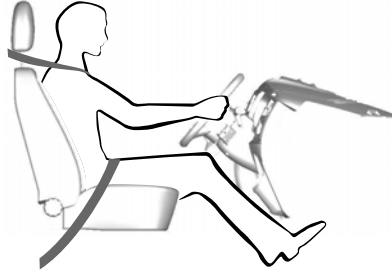
**Note:** *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

**Note:** *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

## Seats

### SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

-  **WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.
-  **WARNING:** Always sit upright against your seatback with your feet on the floor.
-  **WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.


We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degree from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.

- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### HEAD RESTRAINTS

-  **WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

# Seats



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

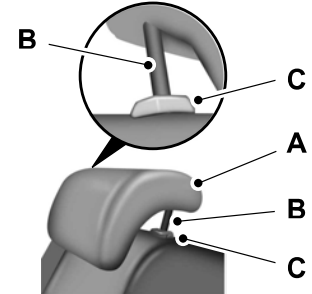
## Front Seat Head Restraints



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

## Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



The rear seat center head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

## Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

## Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

# Seats

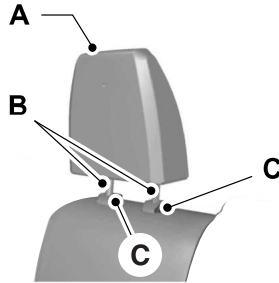
## Removing the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraint



The rear seat outermost head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

## Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold both C buttons.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MANUAL SEATS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

**WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.





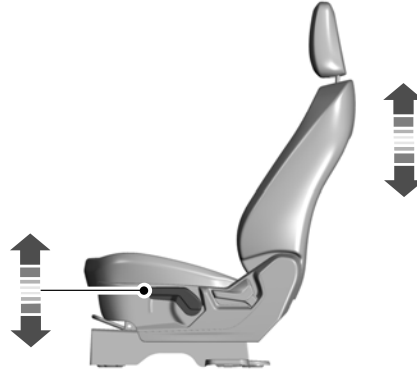
## Seats

### Adjusting the Lumbar Support



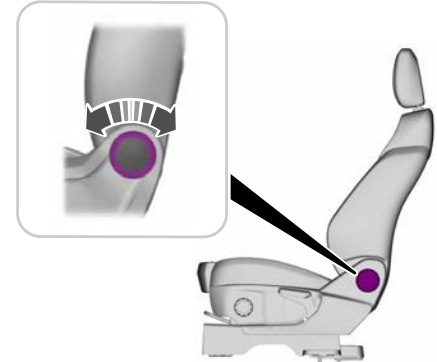
E152451

### Adjusting the Seat Height (If Equipped)



### Adjusting the Seat Backrest

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.



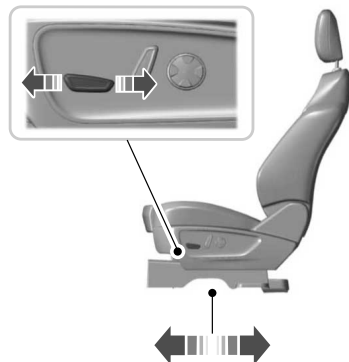
### POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

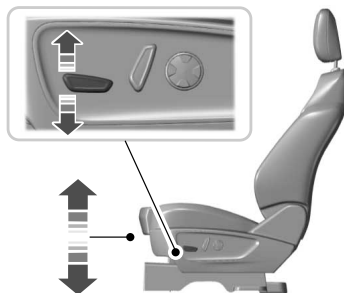
**⚠ WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

## Seats

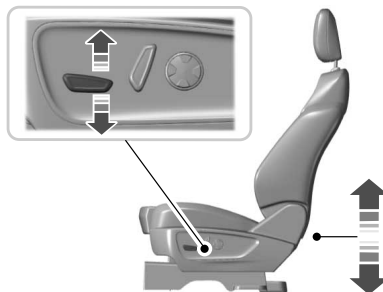
### Moving the Seat Backward and Forward



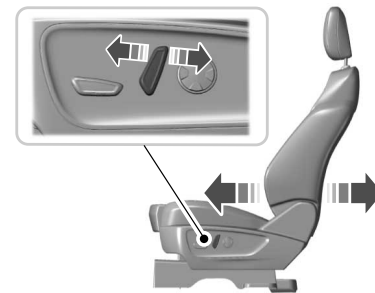
### Adjusting the Seat Cushion (If Equipped)



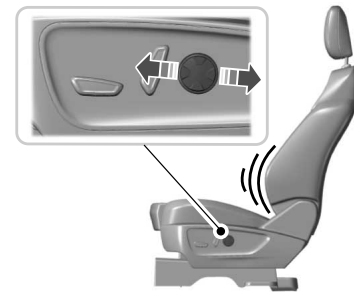
### Adjusting the Seat Height



### Adjusting the Seat Backrest



### Adjusting the Lumbar Support



# Seats

## REAR SEATS

### Folding the Seatback

**WARNING:** When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



E159654

With the seat empty, pull the lever up to fold the seatback forward.

**Note:** Lower the head restraints. See *Head Restraints* (page 170).

### Unfolding the Seatback

**WARNING:** When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the safety belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

### Recline Adjustment

With the seat occupied, pull the lever up to recline the seat backward.

## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Front Seats

**WARNING:** People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

**Note:** The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

# Seats



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

**Note:** After 90 minutes of operation, the heated seats switch off. Press the heated seat symbol to switch the heated seats on.

**Note:** Depending on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when your vehicle was turned off.

## Rear Seats (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

**Note:** The heated seats will only function when the engine is running.

The rear seat heat controls are located on the rear of the center console.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

## Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

### HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

# Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

- 1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- 2. Press **Vehicle**.
- 3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The default setting is on.

**Note:** Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.

## Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see [here](#).

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

## Auxiliary Power Points

### 12 Volt DC Power Point



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

**Note:** Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

**Note:** Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

**Note:** Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the power point and blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

### Locations

Power points may be in the following locations:

- On the front of the center console.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

### 230 Volt AC Power Point (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 230 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 150 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.

**Note:** The power point turns off when you switch the ignition off, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

You can use the power point for electric devices that require up to 150 watts. It is on the rear of the center console

**Note:** Depending on the country in which your vehicle is built, the voltage supply is either 110 volts or 230 volts.

When the indicator light on the power point is:

- On: The power point is working, the ignition is on, or the vehicle is in accessory mode.
- Off: The power point is off, the ignition is off, or the vehicle is not in accessory mode.
- Flashing: The power point is in fault mode.

The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the 150 watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Switch the ignition back on, but do not plug your device back in. Let the system cool off and switch the ignition off to reset the fault mode. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on.

## Auxiliary Power Points

Do not use the power point for certain electric devices, including:

- Cathode-ray, tube-type televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools or compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices, which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch-sensor lamps.

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

The system supports one Qi wireless charging compatible device on the charging area.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip, for example passports, parking tickets or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage may occur to the magnetic strip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance.

**Note:** The rate of charge, or charging power, is controlled by the device. During charging, the device and the charger may heat up, which is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the charger may stop charging.



The charging area is on the center console or lower instrument panel.

You can charge a device if the vehicle is on, when in accessory mode, or anytime SYNC is on.

To begin charging, place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

**Note:** The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.

**Note:** If the system detects a foreign object, or if the device is misaligned on the charging area, charging stops and a message could appear in the display.

**Note:** Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices when in your vehicle.



## Storage Compartments

---


### OVERHEAD CONSOLE





Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.


# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## KEYLESS STARTING

**Note:** *The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones*

**Note:** *A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

## Ignition Modes



E142555

The keyless starting system has three modes:

**Off:** Turns the ignition off.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

**On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

- Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Start:** Starts the engine.

- Press the brake pedal, and then press and hold the button until the engine starts.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) for an automatic transmission or neutral (N) for a manual transmission.

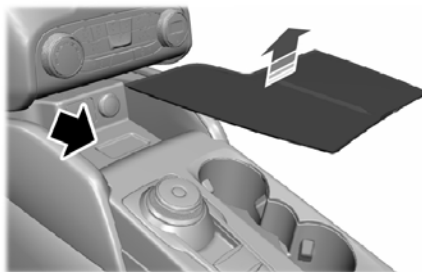
**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



1. Remove the mat covering the backup location.
2. Center the key in the backup location as shown.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal for an automatic transmission, or clutch pedal for a manual transmission, then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 20 seconds, you can no longer restart your vehicle without a valid key present inside your vehicle.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running even if the system does not detect a valid key.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). For vehicles with a manual transmission, shift into neutral (N).
4. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
5. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops cranking.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

6. Release the accelerator pedal.
7. Start the engine.

**Note:** You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

Your vehicle has a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer

counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle, such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on, for the current ignition cycle only. Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 111).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET, depending on your type of information display, to temporarily switch the feature off.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). For vehicles with a manual transmission, shift into neutral (N).
2. Press the push button ignition switch once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

**Note:** If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) for an automatic transmission, or stay in neutral for a manual transmission.
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or Hot Engine

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down after a short period of time, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Before starting the engine check the following:

- Make sure all occupants fasten their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.*



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off. For vehicles with automatic transmission, fully depress the brake pedal. For vehicles with manual transmission, fully depress the clutch pedal. Start the engine.

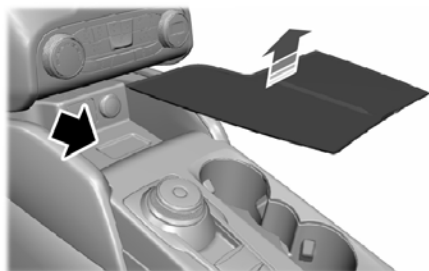
**Note:** *When the temperature is below -15°C (5°F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine



1. Remove the mat covering the backup location.
2. Center the key in the backup location as shown.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. For vehicles with automatic transmission, fully depress the brake pedal. For vehicles with manual transmission, fully depress the clutch pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral.
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Keep the accelerator pedal fully depressed and press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

## Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 111).
- During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

**Note:** *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine shut down.*

## Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

1. Put the transmission into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmission, or first gear for vehicles with manual transmission.
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants fasten their seatbelt.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

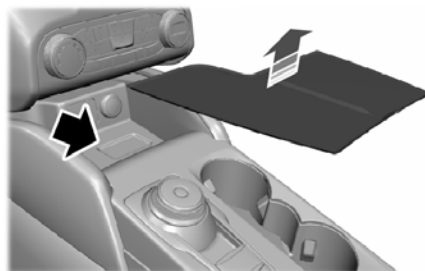
**Note:** The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle has a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts. See **Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 195).

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, see an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



1. Remove the mat covering the backup location.
2. Center the passive key in the backup location.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

## Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 20 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 20 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key. You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid passive key within 20 seconds.

## Automatic Shutdown

This feature shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Automatic Shutdown Override

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Interacting with your vehicle, for example pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on, for the current ignition cycle only. Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 111).
- During the countdown before shutdown, you are prompted to press **OK** or **RESET**, depending on your type of information display, to temporarily switch the feature off.

## Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Stationary

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

**Note:** This switches off the ignition, warning lamps and indicators.

**Note:** If your vehicle is left running for 30 minutes without any interaction, it automatically shuts down.

## Switching Off Your Vehicle When It Is Moving



**WARNING:** Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1. Put the transmission in neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P).
3. Press and hold the push button ignition switch for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

## Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods of time, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP - MILD HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (MHEV)

### What is Auto-Start-Stop

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights or when your vehicle is coasting at a speed less than the engine stop speed that you have set. The system is designed to stop the engine when the transmission is in gear or in neutral.

### Auto-Start-Stop Precautions



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Auto-Start-Stop Settings

#### Setting the Engine Stop Speed - Vehicles with: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle settings**.
3. Select **Rolling StartStop**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

#### Setting the Engine Stop Speed - Vehicles with: 6.5 Inch or 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Rolling StartStop**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

### Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Stopping the Engine

#### Stopping the Engine in Gear

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

**Note:** You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.

#### Stopping the Engine in Neutral

1. Press the brake pedal and slow your vehicle down to 12 km/h (7 mph) or less.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

**Note:** You can set the speed at which the system stops the engine through the information display.

1. Press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.
2. Release the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Power assist steering remains on when the engine stops.

## Restarting the Engine

### Restarting the Engine in Gear

Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** If Auto Hold is active, releasing the brake does not trigger a restart. Pressing the accelerator pedal restarts your vehicle.

### Restarting the Engine in Neutral

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Select a gear.

### Auto-Start-Stop Indicators



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

### Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

## Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Shift into neutral.
Auto StartStop Press clutch to start engine	The system cannot restart the engine.	Fully press the clutch pedal.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## AUTO-START-STOP - MANUAL TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Always switch the ignition off and fully apply the parking brake before carrying out any maintenance or leaving your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death if the engine restarts.

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at a high altitude.
- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If the engine is warming up.

- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

**Note:** The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.

### Using Auto-Start-Stop

#### Stopping the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.

#### Restarting the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

**Note:** To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.

**Note:** The system provides stall recovery. To restart the engine after stalling, fully press the clutch pedal.

#### Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch it off.

**Note:** **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

**Note:** The system turns off when it detects a malfunction. If it remains off, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Auto-Start-Stop Warning

Sounds when you open the driver door and the system has stopped the engine.

### Information Messages

#### Manual Transmission

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal.
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine.

### Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

### AUTO-START-STOP - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Principle of Operation

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights. Your vehicle has an enhanced starter motor that is designed for an increased number of engine starts.

The system does not stop the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If your vehicle is at high altitude.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

- If you have switched the heated windshield on.
- If you have shifted into sport (S) or manual (M).
- If your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- If the engine is warming up.
- If the outside temperature is too low or too high.
- If the battery charge is low or the battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.
- If the steering angle is far beyond center.

The system restarts the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- If you switch the heated windshield on.
- If you have opened the driver door.
- If you have unfastened the driver seatbelt.
- If you switch maximum defrost on.
- If you turn the steering wheel.
- If your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- To maintain adequate brake assistance.
- To maintain the interior climate or reduce fogging.

**Note:** *The blower motor speed could change when the system restarts the engine.*

### Using Auto-Start-Stop



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Stopping the Engine

Stop your vehicle, keep in drive (D) and keep your foot on the brake pedal.

**Note:** *The engine also stops if you shift into park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine is off.*

### Restarting the Engine

- Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.
- A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

### Switching the System On and Off



The system turns on when you switch the ignition on. Press the switch to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF illuminates in the switch.*

Press the switch again to switch the system back on.

The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take an action.



The auto-start stop indicator illuminates grey with a strike out when the system is not available.

**Note:** *The system is designed to turn off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

**Note:** *You can display the reason the system is not available in the information display.*

# Unique Driving Characteristics

## Information Messages

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The engine does not start in reverse (R) unless you press the brake pedal.	Press the brake pedal.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine.

## Replacing the Battery

Replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification for the system to function correctly.

## HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

This hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide breakthrough performance and improved efficiency. Familiarizing yourself with these unique characteristics provides an optimal driving experience from your vehicle.

## Starting



When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running. The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both. Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

## Driving

The gas engine automatically starts and stops to provide power when needed and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop, or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the engine to start up or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Climbing a hill.
- Charge level of high voltage battery is low.
- High or low outside temperatures in order to provide system heating or cooling.
- Engine not warm enough to provide passenger requested cabin temperature.
- Towing a trailer.

# Unique Driving Characteristics

---

- Selectable drive modes: Certain selectable drive modes may cause the engine to run. See **What Is Drive Mode Control** (page 320).
- Live in Drive: Use of the paddle shifters while in drive (D) may cause the engine to run. See **Automatic Transmission** (page 237).

## Stopping

The gas engine may shut off to conserve fuel as you come to a stop. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive.

## Transmission Operation

The engine and electric motor together propel the vehicle through the automatic transmission. This is normal hybrid operating and helps deliver fuel efficiency and performance.

## Battery

Your hybrid is equipped with a high voltage battery. A cool battery maintains battery life and provides the best possible performance. The high voltage battery is cooled by the vehicle's air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is on, you may notice a slight increase in air temperature coming from the climate control vents while the battery is cooling. You may also notice cool air flowing from the vents when the air conditioning or blower is off.

## Braking

Your hybrid is equipped with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and it captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You may also notice during extending downhill driving that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off. During this engine braking, the engine stays on, but it is not using any fuel. You may also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

## Driving to Optimize Fuel Economy

**Note:** *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your fuel economy should improve throughout your hybrid's break-in period. As with any vehicle, your driving habits and accessory usage can significantly impact your fuel economy. For best results, keep these tips in mind:

- Keep the tires properly inflated and only use the recommended size.
- Aggressive driving increases the amount of energy required to move your vehicle. In general, you can achieve better fuel economy with mild to moderate acceleration and deceleration. Moderate braking is particularly important since it allows you to maximize the energy captured by the regenerative braking system.

Additional Tips:

- Do not carry extra loads.
- Be mindful of adding external accessories that may increase aerodynamic drag.
- Observe posted speed limits.



## Unique Driving Characteristics

- Perform all scheduled maintenance.
- There is no need to wait for your engine to warm up. The vehicle is ready to drive immediately after starting.

### PLUG-IN HYBRID VEHICLE OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Plug in your vehicle regularly for optimal use of the high voltage battery's electric-only range capability. Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy. This energy propels the vehicle.

You can see your estimated electric-only driving range in blue next to the gasoline range on the information display.

The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in Normal drive mode. System conditions could require engine operation, however, the system uses the available electric range whenever possible.

When your electric-only range reaches zero, the powertrain system switches to hybrid operation. This means that you have depleted the energy you gained from plugging in and charging your vehicle. Both the gasoline engine and electric motor power

your vehicle and maximize fuel economy during hybrid operation. You receive some electric-only driving with hybrid operation as the powertrain system maintains the high voltage battery charge within functional limits.

### Electric Vehicle (EV) Modes



Your vehicle contains selectable electric vehicle (EV) modes. Press the button on the center console to change the mode. EV Now and EV Later modes are only available when you have electric-only driving range available.

**Note:** EV mode availability also depends on the state of the selectable drive mode system.

### Auto EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

### EV Now



This mode provides an electric only driving experience. Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing. An EV Now information on demand screen appears. This screen allows you to enable your engine while in EV Now mode.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Press the OK button on the steering wheel when viewing the EV Now information on demand screen. Your vehicle enables the engine as needed and returns to EV Now mode when no longer needed.
- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Press the EV button. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again using the EV button.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

### EV Later



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again using the EV button during your next drive.

When you select EV Later with the vehicle fully charged or near fully charged, the battery uses some electric-only driving range to discharge the battery, and allows for full operation of the regenerative braking system.

### EV Charge



This mode uses your vehicle's engine to charge the high voltage battery versus plugging the vehicle into a utility grid.

The electric range gained through EV Charge allows you to switch to Auto EV or EV Now for full electric operation later in your drive. The battery cannot completely charge to 100% when in EV Charge mode. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system. When the battery reaches its EV Charge limit, the vehicle remains in EV Charge mode and maintains that charge level, until you select another EV Mode, or until you switch the vehicle off.

When you enable EV Charge, a white EV Charge icon appears in the information display.

EV Charge resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Charge again using the EV button during your next drive.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

### Low Engine Use

The low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature, and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation. When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode

begins, a message appears in the information display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.

EV Now mode is not available during low engine use mode.

**Note:** Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode could operate more frequently.

**Note:** You do not require an oil change, but it gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.

### HYBRID VEHICLE FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS (IF EQUIPPED)

Question	Answer
What are the series of clicks from the cargo area when I first turn the key in the ignition?	The high voltage battery is electrically isolated from the rest of the vehicle when the key is off. When you switch the key on, high voltage contactors inside the battery are closed to make the electricity available to the motor and generator and enable the vehicle to drive. The clicks are the sound of these contactors as they close and open during start up and shut down.
Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?	The vehicle's computer will determine if an engine start is required at key-on. Silent key start will start the engine if it is necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low.
Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?	There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emissions. As the climate gets cooler, this engine-on time is extended.
Why does my engine not shut down above 137 km/h (85 mph)?	The engine is required to turn on above this speed to protect the transmission hardware.

## Unique Driving Characteristics

Question	Answer
Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?	In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.
Why does my engine rev up so high sometimes when I accelerate?	Your vehicle's engine and transmission are designed to deliver the power you need at the most efficient engine speed. This may be higher than expected during heavy accelerations, and may fluctuate when driving at a steady speed. These are characteristics of the Atkinson engine cycle and the transmission technology that help maximize your hybrid's fuel economy.
Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?	Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).
How long will my high voltage battery last? Does it need maintenance?	The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of the vehicle and requires no maintenance.
Can you charge the battery with a plug into an AC outlet?	The plug-in hybrid high voltage battery can be charged by plugging the vehicle into an AC outlet.
	There are no provisions for charging the conventional hybrid high voltage battery from a power supply external to the vehicle.
Can I tow the hybrid behind my motor home with all four wheels down?	Yes. Your hybrid vehicle can be flat towed without modification. See <b>Towing</b> (page 331).

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.

- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

## Fuel and Refueling



E268503

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

### Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

### FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



**WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

### Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

### FUEL QUALITY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



**WARNING:** Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

# Fuel and Refueling

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

**Note:** We recommend that you only use high quality fuel.

## Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

## Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

## Fuel and Refueling



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 203).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

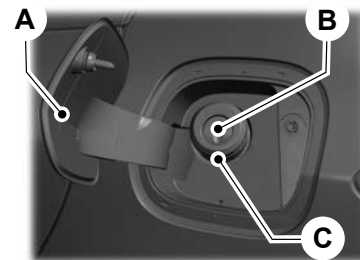


3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING-EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### Refueling System Overview



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



# Fuel and Refueling



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

## Refueling Your Vehicle

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

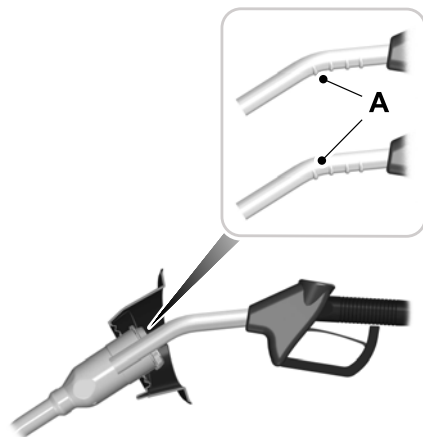
**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

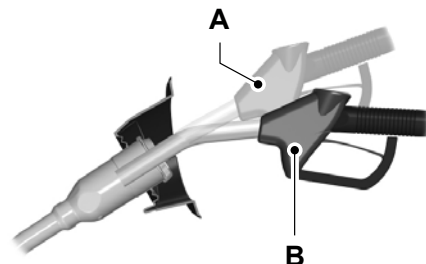
**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

## Fuel and Refueling

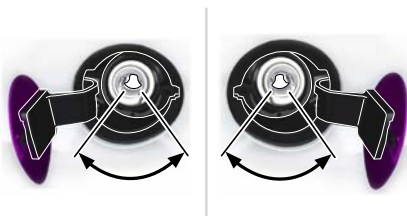


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

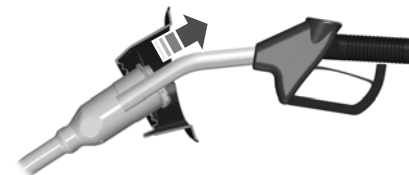


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage that the vehicle Warranty may not cover. See your authorized dealer immediately.

### Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

## Fuel and Refueling

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 203). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, see your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### REFUELING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

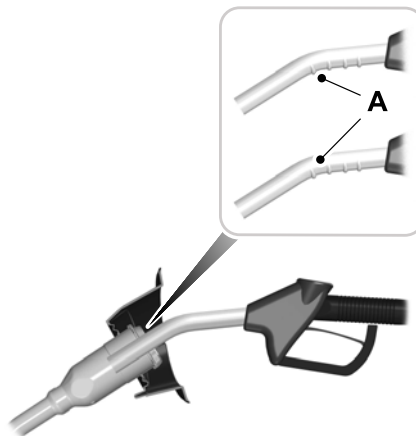
1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

## Fuel and Refueling

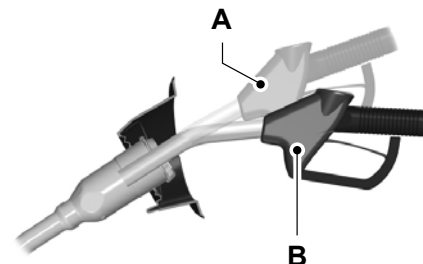


E146221

2. Press the button next to the lighting control to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

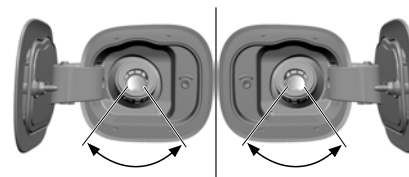


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



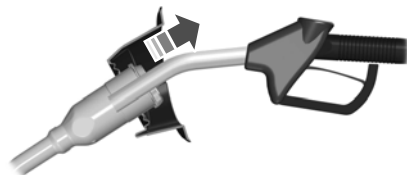
E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

## Fuel and Refueling



- When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
- Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the dashboard again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the dashboard.

### System Warnings

If the fuel filler door fails to open, an information message appears in the information display.

Message	Description and Action
Refuel error See manual	A warning message appears in the information display when the fuel system fails to depressurize or the fuel filler door fails to open. You may have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

If the information message appears, do the following:

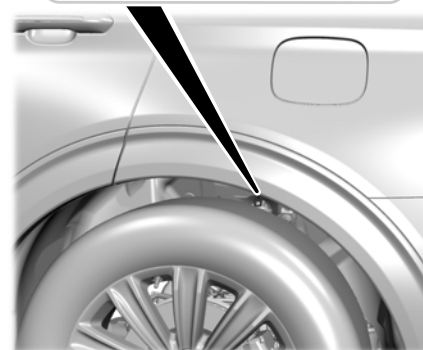
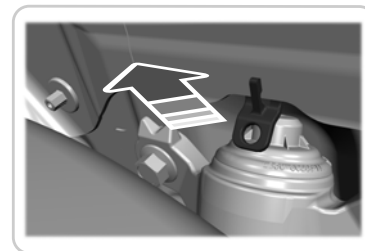
- Check the fuel filler door for anything that may be obstructing its movement, for example ice or snow.
- Remove any obstruction from the fuel filler door.
- Press the button on the dashboard to open the fuel filler door.
- If the fuel filler door fails to open and the information message remains in the information display, use the fuel filler door manual override lever.

### Fuel Filler Door Manual Override Lever

When using the manual override lever do the following:

**Note:** The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

- Switch the ignition on.



# Fuel and Refueling

**Note:** *The manual override lever is in the driver side rear wheel well area.*

2. Pull the manual override lever.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing.

## Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 416).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

## Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function.

The first 1,500 km (1,000 mi) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km (2,000 mi).

## Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 407).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.

- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol. See **Fuel Quality** (page 201).
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

# Engine Emission Control

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 342).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not use leaded fuel.
- Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** *Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

### On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 105).

## SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTANT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle has a selective catalytic reductant system. This reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system. The engine does not start if you tamper with or disable the selective catalytic reductant system.

For the system to correctly operate, you must maintain the fluid level.

# Engine Emission Control

**Note:** When you switch the engine off the selective catalytic reductant system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

## AdBlue® Guidelines

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank



E204215

The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

## Filling in Cold Climates

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

**Note:** If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

## Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump



**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



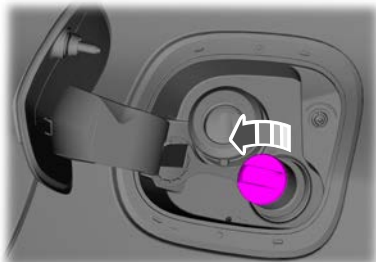
## Engine Emission Control



**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

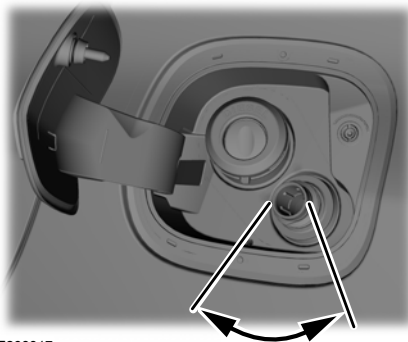
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



E268809

2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



E268817

4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

**Note:** The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Filling the AdBlue® Tank Using a Container



**WARNING:** Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



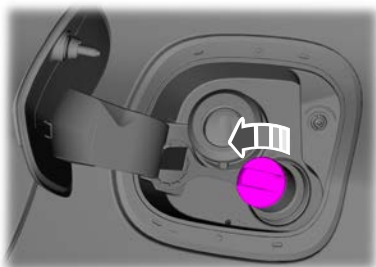
**WARNING:** Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

# Engine Emission Control

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



E268809

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

**Note:** The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Checking the AdBlue® Level

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **AdBlue®**.

## AdBlue® Consumption

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Warning Lamp



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Engine Emission Control

## Selective Catalytic Reductant System Information Messages

### AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range : XXXX km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range : XXXX mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® low No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display. See <b>Information Displays</b> (page 111).

**Note:** When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

**Note:** If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

# Engine Emission Control

## AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® system No engine start in XXXX mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® system Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

To reduce the risk of causing damage to the gasoline particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Regeneration

Particles in the exhaust gas collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles in the exhaust gas into harmless gases.

# Engine Emission Control

Regeneration occurs during normal driving, to varying degrees depending on how you drive. Passive regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed but if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust gas temperature to remove the particles that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist passive regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional journeys that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

If the filter is saturated or is approaching saturation, a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** A warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the information display on some vehicles.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates or a message appears in the information display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## Gasoline Particulate Filter Warning Lamps and Indicators




Malfunction indicator lamp.


## Gasoline Particulate Filter Information Messages

Message	Action
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears.</li><li>• Avoid prolonged engine idling.</li><li>• Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.</li></ul>
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Drive at a moderate speed.</li><li>• Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration.</li><li>• Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.</li></ul>

# Engine Emission Control

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

 **WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

 **WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a diesel particulate filter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. It filters harmful diesel particulates, for example soot from the exhaust gas.

To avoid damaging the diesel particulate filter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 342).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps or information messages regarding exhaust system cleaning and regeneration.

**Note:** *This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

## On-Board Diagnostics System

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this indicates that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Engine coolant temperature warning lamp.



Ignition warning lamp.



Malfunction indicator lamp.



Powertrain warning Lamp.



Water in fuel warning lamp.

If you continue to drive your vehicle with a warning lamp illuminated, the engine could stop without warning. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Engine Emission Control

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 105).

## Diesel Particulate Filter Automatic Regeneration



**WARNING:** Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain correct operation. The emission control system automatically carries out this process. As soot gathers in the system it begins to restrict the filter. The soot that gathers inside the filter is cleaned in two different ways, passive regeneration and active regeneration. Both methods occur automatically and require no actions from the driver. During automatic regeneration, the system cleans the diesel particulate filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning happens during normal engine operating conditions at varying levels depending on driving conditions.



Diesel particulate filter warning lamp.

If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a warning lamp or information message appears in the information display. Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning.

The warning lamp continues to illuminate until the automatic regeneration process completes. Continue to drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective diesel particulate filter cleaning until the warning lamp turns off.

Failure to carry out regeneration when required could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, the system disables the ability to carry out regeneration. This could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Where vehicle use meets any of the following conditions:

- Driving short distances.
- Prolonged engine idling.
- Frequently switching the engine on and off.
- High levels of acceleration and deceleration.

We recommend you assist the regeneration process by:

- Avoiding prolonged engine idling.
- Drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective cleaning. Drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes.

# Engine Emission Control

---



If the soot load in the diesel particulate filter reaches a critical level, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates with the diesel particulate filter warning message. A service regeneration must be performed to recover the particulate filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to prevent further damage.

Automatic regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the soot particles. During cleaning, soot particles are converted to harmless gasses. Once cleaned, the diesel particulate filter continues to trap harmful diesel particles.

If you are driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to indicate automatic regeneration is in progress.

If you are not driving your vehicle in a manner that allows effective cleaning, a message may appear in the information display to instruct you to drive in a manner that allows automatic regeneration.

The automatic regeneration process is most effective when you drive at a steady vehicle speed of 48 km/h (30 mph) or above for approximately 20 minutes. The frequency and duration of the regeneration process varies by how you drive your vehicle, the outside air temperature and altitude. Frequency varies between 160 km (100 mi) and 500 km (310 mi) and each regeneration process lasts between 10 and 20 minutes.


**Note:** *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*


**Note:** *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you could smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during the regeneration process. This is normal.*




## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

### GENERAL INFORMATION

 **WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.


**Note:** The high-voltage battery does not require regular service maintenance.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.


The high-voltage battery pack contains a lithium-ion battery. The pack is underneath the vehicle. The high-voltage battery system uses an advanced liquid heating and cooling system to regulate the high-voltage battery temperature and help maximize high-voltage battery life.


### CHARGING THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY


#### IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS (If Equipped)


 **WARNING:** This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.

### RISK OF FIRE or ELECTRIC SHOCK

 **WARNING:** The AC wall plug must fit firmly into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a dual-voltage charging cord with a worn outlet may cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electric shock or fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the 240 V convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock or fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow charging equipment to be immersed in water or liquids. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, or serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to open the charging equipment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not use the charging equipment if it is faulty or has been damaged. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.



**WARNING:** Install charging equipment in compliance with local regulations. Failure to follow this warning could result in fire, electric shock, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. The wall outlet must be in good condition and meet up-to-date local codes. Have a qualified electrician check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded. Failure to follow this instruction could result in electric shock, personal injury, or death.



**WARNING:** Do not modify the dual-voltage charging cord plug. If the dual-voltage charging cord plug does not properly fit into the wall outlet, have a qualified electrician install the correct wall outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, or death.

**Note:** *This product must be grounded. If it should malfunction or break down, grounding provides a path of least resistance for electric current to reduce the risk of electric shock. This product comes with a cord having an equipment grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be plugged into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.*

### OPERATION INSTRUCTIONS

- Read all the instructions before using this product.
- This device should be supervised when used around children.
- Do not put fingers into the electric vehicle (EV) connector.

- Do not use this product with the flexible power cord or EV cable frayed, broken insulation, or any other signs of damage.
- Do not use this product with the enclosure or the EV connector broken, cracked, open, or showing any other indication of damage.

### Charging Equipment

Your vehicle has a convenience cord in the luggage compartment.

**Note:** *Do not use the 240 volt convenience cord with an extension cord, two-prong adapter, surge protector, timer or other adapter.*

**Note:** *If charging for your plug-in vehicle fails, please call the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Call for support or LiveChat at your regional vehicle manufacture's website.*

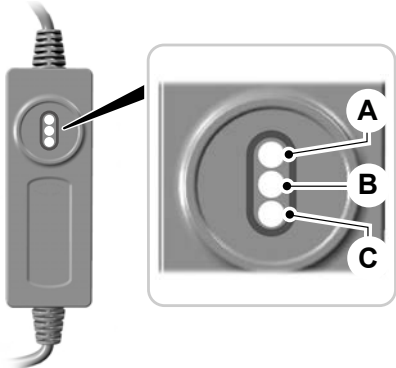
**Note:** *Store the convenience cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of -40–90°C (-40–194°F).*

**Note:** *You need to plug the convenience cord into a dedicated outlet.*

# High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

**Note:** *Firmly fit the AC wall plug into the AC outlet. If the connection feels loose, worn or the AC outlet is damaged, please have a qualified electrician replace the AC outlet. Using a convenience cord with a worn outlet could cause burns, property damage and increase the risk of electrical shock.*

Convenience Cord



- A. Power.
- B. Fault.
- C. Check Outlet.

**CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE**

The AC outlet must be a two-prong AC outlet that is properly grounded, and in good condition. Use a dedicated line. You cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

European Countries Max Pilot Current Rating	Amperage Rating
Denmark	6A
France, Finland, Italy, Switzerland	8A
Rest of Europe	10A

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

Make sure that the convenience cord is completely unwrapped before charging.

Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charging coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure the electrical source meets the requirements for the high voltage batteries to charge.

**Note:** When the convenience cord is plugged into an outlet, use the following table to determine your vehicle charge status. If the power indicator light is off after plugging in the convenience cord, use a different outlet.

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
Off	Off	Off	If the LED indicators are off after plugging in the convenience cord and the plug is experiencing a no power condition from the wall outlet, use a different outlet.	Use a different wall outlet.
On	Off	Off	The convenience cord is plugged into the wall outlet and ready to charge your vehicle. Reference the charge port section below for information on vehicle charging. The charge cord performs a self-test.	No action required.
On	Flashing	On	The convenience cord AC plug is experiencing an overheat condition. Convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. If the fault persists, you have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Off	Flashing	The convenience cord is charging at a reduced current rate due to a wall outlet over temperature condition.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use different outlet.
On	On	Flashing	The convenience cord AC plug has overheated. Cordset retry mode exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. You have a bad wall outlet.	Have the outlet serviced or use a different outlet.

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

Convenience Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
On	On	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. Your vehicle is not charging. Call for service.	Request vehicle service.
On	Flashing	Off	The convenience cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The convenience cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. Your vehicle is not charging.	Unplug and re-plug into the vehicle charge port.
On	On/Two Flash Interval	Two Flash Interval	Missing ground at AC outlet. Your vehicle is not charging.	Connect to properly grounded AC outlet. If fault persist for more than 3 minutes, return cordset for service.
On	On/Flashing	Off	Convenience cord internal fault. Call for service.	Wait 3 minutes for cordset retry or self correction. If fault persist, request cordset service. Replace cordset.

**Note:** Make sure that the electrical source outlet meets the convenience cord requirements for the high voltage batteries to charge properly.

### Charge Port

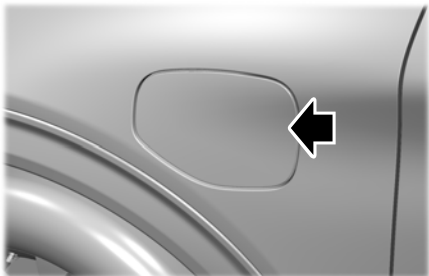


seen.

Charging connector shall be connected to the vehicle inlet where the same C identifier can be

The charge port is between the front left-hand side door and front left-hand wheel well. To open, press the center, right edge of the charge port door and then release.

# High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)



**Note:** Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed will damage the charge port.

The charge status indicator around the charge port indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

Divided into five zones, the charge status indicator displays the state of charge in 20 percent increments.

The color white is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge times button.

The color blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.

The color orange is used to indicate charge faults.

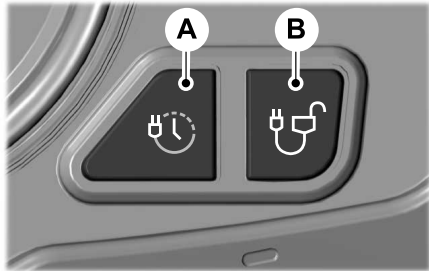


## Charge Times Button

Use the charge times button to either turn off or turn on your charge times settings for this location. Select charge settings on the home page of your touchscreen or under the vehicle settings menu to access charge preferences. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).

## Cord Unlock Button

Press the cord unlock button to unlock the charge cord. The vehicle will check for a nearby key. If the vehicle detects the key or you unlock the doors prior to pressing the cord unlock button, then the charge cord unlocks. If the cord fails to unlock, you can attempt to unlock the cord through the vehicle touchscreen. See Cord Unlock under Vehicle Settings on your touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).



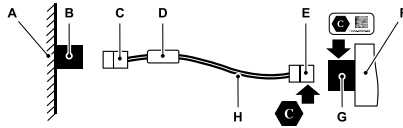
A	Charge times on and off button
B	Cord unlock button

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

### Charging At Home

You must unwrap your universal home charge cord completely before charging.

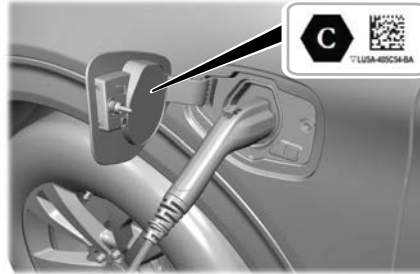
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains
- B Socket Outlet (Household)
- C Plug
- D Control box
- E Charge coupler
- F Vehicle
- G Charge port receptacle
- H Universal home charge cord

1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Plug the universal home charge cord plug into the AC outlet.

3. Fully open the charge port door.



4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully engage the charge coupler.

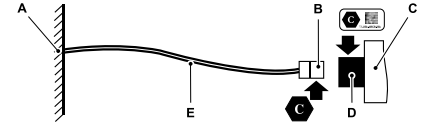
**Note:** Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the charge coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** It takes approximately four to six hours to completely charge a discharged battery.

### Charging in Public

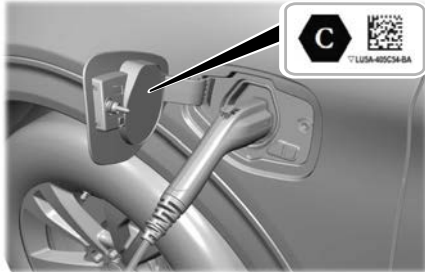
When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



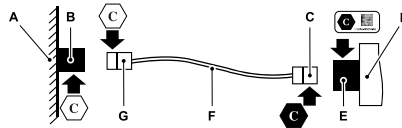
- A AC charge station
- B Charge coupler
- C Vehicle
- D Charge port receptacle
- E Cable

1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Select the appropriate charge station port.
3. Fully open the charge port door.

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)



When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



4. Plug the charge station coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully engage the charge station coupler.

**Note:** Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

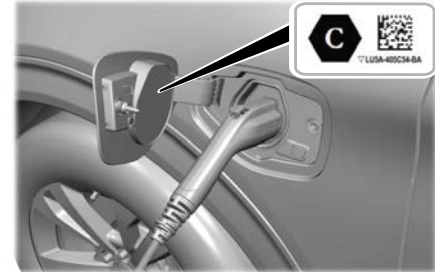
**Note:** When the charge coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** If you are using a 230 V charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

### Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord

You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.

- A AC charge station
  - B Charge station port
  - C Vehicle charge coupler
  - D Vehicle
  - E Charge port receptacle
  - F Public charge cable
  - G Charge station charge coupler
1. Shift into park (P), apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
  2. Plug your public charge cord into the appropriate charge station port.
  3. Remove the charge port cover.



4. Plug the public charge cord coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully engage the public charge cord coupler.

**Note:** Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

**Note:** When the coupler is properly engaged the light ring will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

**Note:** If you are using a 230 V charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.



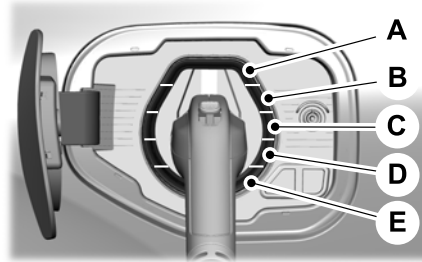
## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

### Charge Port Indicators

**Note:** Pump and fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. The pump and fan noise is normal to hear as it circulates liquid and keeps your high voltage battery cool while charging.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the charge is:

- When the bottom zone is pulsing, the charge is between 0-20 percent.
- When the bottom zone illuminates and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 20-40 percent.
- When two zones illuminate and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 40-60 percent.
- When three zones illuminate, and the next is pulsing, the charge is between 60-80 percent.
- When four zones illuminate, and the top zone is pulsing, the charge is between 80-100 percent.
- When all zones illuminate, the charge is 100 percent.



- A. 80%-100% State of Charge.
- B. 60%-80% State of Charge.
- C. 40%-60% State of Charge.
- D. 20%-40% State of Charge.
- E. 0%-20% State of Charge.

**Note:** When charging stops, the charge status indicator shows all the completed zones solidly lit up in blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if charging stops at 70 percent, then the bottom three zones light up solidly to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to preferred charge settings or charge station actions.

**Note:** If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is on. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, then you can turn it off. See charge port light under vehicle settings on your touchscreen. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).



**Note:** Charging faults are identified by the color orange on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge cord, charge station or electrical supply.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the entire charge status indicator lights up solidly in orange color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charging coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

**Note:** If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or charge cord, the entire charge status indicator flashes continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, check the charge cord and the charge station or electrical supply.

## High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

### Waiting to Charge



Charging may not begin upon plugging in if you have set up preferred charge times for this vehicle location. Your vehicle could delay charging to take advantage of off-peak electricity rates. Your vehicle optimizes the charge schedule to be complete by your next departure time.

When waiting to charge, plugged in and not currently charging, the charge status indicator shows the present state of charge of the high voltage battery by lighting up all completed zones for 30 seconds before turning off. For example, if the battery is at 70 percent charge, then the bottom three zones solidly light up to indicate a battery charge level of at least 60 percent but less than 80 percent. Consequently, when the current state of charge is less than 20 percent, none of the zones light up.

**Note:** Select charge settings on the home page of your touchscreen or under the vehicle settings menu to access charge preferences. See **SYNC™ 3** (page 453).

**Note:** When your vehicle is waiting to charge, the charge status indicator turns off 30 seconds after displaying the present state of charge. When your vehicle begins charging, the charge status indicator turns on and displays the charging progress.

### Stopping Charging

The charge port unlock button is next to the charge port.



Unlock your vehicle.

Press the charge port unlock button to stop charging the high voltage battery.

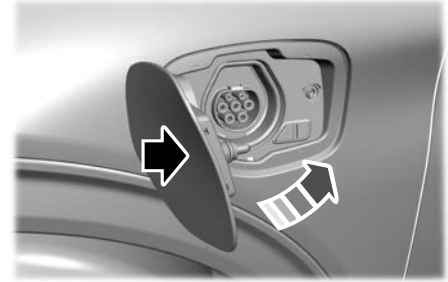
**Note:** If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

### Disconnecting the Charging Equipment

1. Unlock your vehicle.
2. Press the charge port unlock button.
3. Disconnect the coupler from the charge port on your vehicle.

**Note:** You cannot disconnect the coupler until charging has been stopped or completed.

**Note:** Do not use excessive force to disconnect the coupler. This could damage the charge port and the coupler.



4. Close the charge port door.
5. Disconnect the universal home charge cord plug from the AC outlet.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the universal home charge cord plug from the AC outlet when the vehicle is charging. This could damage the AC outlet and the universal home charge cord.

**Note:** If you are still unable to disconnect the charging coupler after trying the cord unlock buttons at the port and on your vehicle touchscreen, press any available stop button on the charging system to disable the charge to your vehicle, then try again.

### MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure to completely wrap the convenience cord after charging.

# High Voltage Battery (If Equipped)

When complete, replace convenience cord in the luggage compartment.

**Note:** Do not hold convenience cord by flexible power cable.

**Note:** Store the convenience cord in a clean dry place between the temperature of -40–90°C (-40–194°F).

## Charging Equipment Identification Symbols



Identifier symbol visible on universal home charge cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Universal home charge cord coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS

# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### General Information

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission.

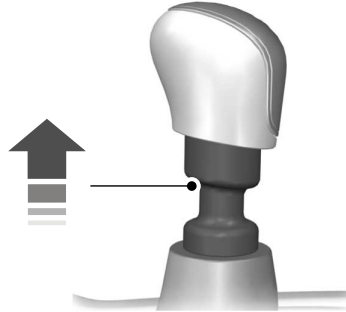
If any gear is not fully engaged, fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

### Shifting Into Reverse Gear

Do not shift into reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

**⚠ WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Transmission

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.

## Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission selector. The transmission selector is on the center console, below the climate control system.

To place the vehicle in gear from park (P):

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal when shifting out of park (P).

2. Rotate the outer ring of the transmission selector clockwise from park (P), until the desired gear illuminates on the transmission selector.
3. Release the brake pedal and the transmission remains in the selected gear.

### Automatic Transmission Position Indicators

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



**Note:** The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



### Park (P)

With the transmission selector in park (P), the vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting the vehicle into and out of park (P).

The electric parking brake could apply when you shift to park (P) without the brake pedal fully depressed. The electric parking brake applies when you shift to park (P) on large slopes, and releases with the drive away release function.

### Reverse (R)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

# Transmission

With the transmission selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

## Neutral (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

With the transmission selector in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

## Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

## Low (L) (If Equipped)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Shift the transmission into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- The intent is not for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

## Manual (M) (If Equipped)

In manual (M), you can upshift or downshift using the paddle shifters.

With your vehicle in drive (D), press the manual (M) button to activate manual mode.

## Manually Shifting Gears

### Shifting Using Paddle Shifters

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear.

Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

**Note:** *Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.*

**Note:** *Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.*

### Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature when overtaking another vehicle, or to temporarily change gear.



Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Hold the right paddle (+) for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

**Note:** *The feature switches off after a short period of time if neither paddle is pulled.*

### Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature for engine braking on hilly or mountainous roads, or to select a specific gear.

# Transmission



Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.

Shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

## Automatic Return to park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.

## Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

## Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode at an automatic car wash if you exit your vehicle, or switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.

## Stay in Neutral Mode Limitations

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Keyless Starting** (page 182).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) button in the middle of the transmission selector.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

# Transmission

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## Stay in Neutral Mode - Failure to Start



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

Use this feature to move the transmission selector out of park (P) if you cannot start the engine.

**Note:** This feature does not function if the vehicle battery charge is low.

Do not tow your vehicle in stay in neutral mode.

1. Switch the ignition on without your foot on the brake pedal.

2. Fully press the brake pedal. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal. Keep the accelerator pedal fully pressed.
4. Shift from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Press the manual (M) or low (L) button.
6. Attempt to start the engine.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears in the information display when your vehicle has entered stay in neutral mode.

**Note:** You must complete this procedure within 20 seconds.

7. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
8. Switch the ignition off.

The transmission returns to park (P) if the vehicle battery charge is low.

**Note:** Prolonged use of stay in neutral mode could cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

To exit stay in neutral mode, press the brake pedal and shift into park (P).

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine may overheat.

## Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings

### Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).



## Transmission

### Automatic Transmission Information Messages

Message	Description
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message typically appears after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Select M to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in neutral mode engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

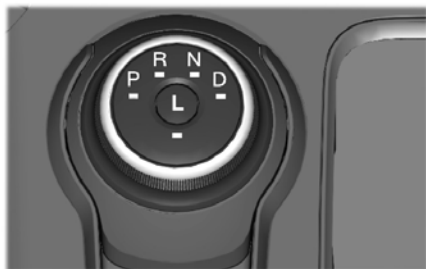


**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Transmission

**Note:** The ready to drive indicator may be off and you may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.

## Understanding the Shift Positions of Your Automatic Transmission



E224178

### Putting your vehicle in or out of gear:

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission shifter. The transmission selector is on the center console, below the climate control system.

To place your vehicle in gear from park (P):

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal when shifting out of park (P).

2. Rotate the outer ring of the transmission selector clockwise from park (P), until the desired gear illuminates on the transmission selector.
3. Release the brake pedal and the transmission remains in the selected gear.

### Automatic Transmission Position Indicators

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



**Note:** The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

### Park (P)

With the transmission selector in park (P), your vehicle locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning. Always come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

### Reverse (R)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

With the transmission selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

### Neutral (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

With the transmission selector in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy.

# Transmission

## Low (L)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

## Automatic Return to park

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** This feature does not operate when your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.

## Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

## Stay in Neutral Mode

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode at an automatic car wash if you exit your vehicle, or switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode.

## Stay in Neutral Mode Limitations

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Entering Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Power your vehicle on. See **Keyless Starting** (page 182).
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) button in the middle of the transmission selector.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode and the neutral (N) button on the transmission selector flashes.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

## Exiting Stay in Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.

# Transmission

2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## Grade Assist



Press the grade assist button to activate grade assist. The grade assist lamp appears in the instrument cluster. Press the button again to switch it off.

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a slope.
- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a slope.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck in Mud or Snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission could occur.

**Note:** Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires could occur, or the engine could overheat.

## Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings

### Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

## Automatic Transmission Information Messages

Message	Description
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Transmission not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message typically appears after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.

## Transmission

---

Message	Description
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Select L to confirm Stay in neutral mode	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Stay in neutral mode engaged	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered stay in neutral mode.

## All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### USING ALL-WHEEL DRIVE

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

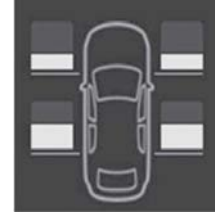
**Note:** When a system malfunction is present, a warning message will be displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 130). This means the system is not functioning correctly and has defaulted to front-wheel drive only. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

**Note:** A message will be displayed in the information display when the system overheats and switches to front-wheel drive. This condition may occur if you operate your vehicle in extreme high-load conditions or with excessive wheel slip, (i.e. deep sand). To resume all-wheel drive function as soon as possible, stop your vehicle in a safe location and switch the ignition off. After the system cools and normal all-wheel drive functionality resumes, a message displays for approximately five seconds.

**Note:** If a warning message appears in the information display when using the spare tire, it should turn off after reinstalling the repaired or replaced road tire and you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** It is recommended that you reinstall the repaired tire or replace the tire as soon as possible. Major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause system damage or default the system to front-wheel drive.

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The all-wheel drive feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered by your warranty.



E142669

A graphic will be displayed in the information display to advise you of the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. The more the area is filled the more power is being distributed to that wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 111).

### Driving on Snow and Ice



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

## All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** *Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.*

All-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it will not stop any faster as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. As your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes** (page 244).

# Brakes

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out, have an authorized dealer check them. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel when braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.*

See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 390).

### Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move

the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

### Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

**Note:** *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

### Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If the light does not momentarily illuminate, continues to flash or remains on when you switch the ignition on, the anti-lock brake system could be disabled. Have the system checked. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective. Have the system checked.

See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 105).

**Note:** *Indicators vary depending on region.*



If the light does not momentarily illuminate, continues to flash or remains on when you switch the ignition on, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have the system checked immediately.



## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock brake system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.



# Brakes

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console.

**Note:** *The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.*

## Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** *It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.*

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

**Note:** *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

## Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** *Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.*

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

## Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Brakes

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could release if you release the clutch pedal and press the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in neutral.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 342).

## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.

# Brakes

Message	Action
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery is running out of charge.

Your vehicle has an electric parking brake. You operate it with a switch instead of a lever. The switch is on the center console or to the left-hand side of the steering wheel, on the lower part of the instrument panel.

**Note:** The electric parking brake makes noises during operation. This is normal.

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake



Pull the switch upward.



The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** It remains illuminated for a short period of time after you switch the ignition off.

If it continues to flash or does not illuminate, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could automatically apply when you shift into park (P). See **Automatic Transmission** (page 237).

### Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

# Brakes

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.



The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

## Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Switch the ignition on.

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Push the switch downward.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

Press and hold the brake pedal.



Pull the switch upward and hold it.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.



Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake

Close the driver door.

Shift into gear.

Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.



The red warning lamp turns off.

If it remains illuminated or flashes, the electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the parking brake.

## Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery is Running Out of Charge

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery is running out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 345).

# Brakes

## Electric Parking Brake Information Messages

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

# Brakes

## HILL START ASSIST



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

**Note:** *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

### Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into a forward gear when facing uphill, or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.

3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

**Note:** *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

## Switching the System On and Off

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on. You cannot turn the system on or off.

# Brakes

## AUTO HOLD



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system is designed to apply the brakes to hold your vehicle at a standstill after you stop your vehicle and release the brake pedal. This could be beneficial in certain situations, for example when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## Switching Auto Hold On and Off



Press the button on your console to access the Auto Hold feature on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, fasten your seatbelt and start the engine.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Make sure you switch the system off before towing with your vehicle or before using an automatic car wash.

## Using Auto Hold

1. Use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.

2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure. If your vehicle is on a steep slope, you need to press the brake pedal harder before the system activates.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 245).

**Note:** If auto-start-stop turns off the engine, auto hold remains active.

**Note:** The system deactivates if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.

3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator turns off.

## Auto Hold Indicator



The auto hold indicator illuminates in the information display when the system is on and is either active or unavailable.

## Brakes

---



Illuminates when the system is active. Your vehicle remains stationary after you release the brake pedal.

Illuminates when the system is on but unavailable to hold your vehicle at a standstill.

The system could be unavailable when any of the following occur:

- During an active park assist maneuver.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You do not fasten your seatbelt.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.



# Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

## USING TRACTION CONTROL



**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

### Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

### Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

### Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

## System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

# Stability Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing

the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

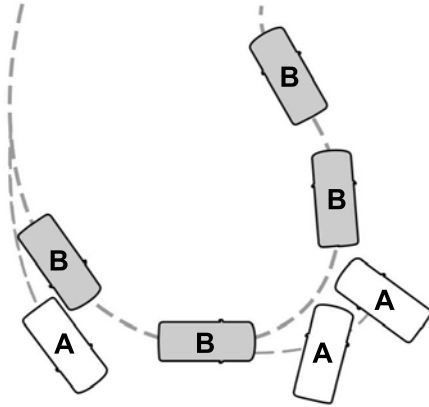
### Roll Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

### Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 253).

# Stability Control



You cannot switch the stability control and roll stability control systems off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the systems turn off.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 253).

- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** If your vehicle has MyKey™, the sensing system cannot be switched off when a MyKey™ is present. See **Non-Configurable MyKey Settings** (page 52).

**Note:** Keep the sensors on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid may detect the trailer and therefore provide an alert. Disable the rear parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the system off through the touchscreen, information display or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 130).

### REAR PARKING AID



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are on the rear bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

**Note:** There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.



The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (70 in) from the rear bumper.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds. Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

### FRONT PARKING AID



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover up the sensors.

**Note:** Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

**Note:** Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are on the front bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*

The system turns off when the vehicle speed reaches 8 km/h (5 mph).



The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the center of the bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the system detects objects when your vehicle is moving at low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds.

If the transmission is in any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings when your vehicle is moving and an object is within the detection area. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warning turns off after two seconds and the visual warning turns off after four seconds.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

## Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds and visual indication stops after four seconds.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below, for example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, visual indication stops after four seconds.

### SIDE SENSING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

The system uses the front and rear outermost parking aid sensors to detect objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system displays them on a virtual map in the information display as your vehicle moves past them.

The sensors are on the front and rear bumpers.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover up the sensors.*

**Note:** *Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

The system may not function if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on within a few seconds.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.

**Note:** *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

**Note:** *Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.*

To reinitialize the system, you may have to drive your vehicle approximately 3 m (10 ft).



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



The sensor coverage area is up to 60 cm (24 in) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

**Note:** *The system does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear sensor.*

### Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when detected objects are within 60 cm (24 in) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds.

When you shift into any forward gear, the system provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings turn off after two seconds and the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

When you shift into neutral (N), the system only provides a visual indication if your vehicle is moving at a speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or below. For example, your vehicle is moving on a slope, and the system detects an object moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION – MMT6

The system assists parking into and out of parking spaces. Sensors are used to detect parking spaces. The system then steers as required to maneuver into or out of a parking space. You control the accelerator, brakes and changing gears.

#### Using Active Park Assist



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



The active park assist button is next to the gearshift lever.

#### Driving into a Parking Space

1. Press the active park assist button.

**Note:** The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.
3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Bring your vehicle to a complete standstill.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
6. Drive backward and your vehicle steers itself into the parking space.
7. Follow the instructions on the information display.

**Note:** When parking is complete, a tone sounds and an information message appears.

#### Leaving a Parking Space

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Release the steering wheel and shift into reverse (R).
4. Follow the instructions on the information display.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

## Canceling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, press the active park assist button or turn the steering wheel.

**Note:** It also cancels when your vehicle exceeds 9 km/h (6 mph).

## Brake System Intervention

When active park assist is controlling the steering, it may under certain conditions apply the brakes to slow or stop your vehicle.

**Note:** This could cause the parking assistance to cancel.

## Active Park Assist Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	The sensors may be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.
	The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	You are using a spare tire or a tire that is significantly worn more than the other tires.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST - 8-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

The system assists parking into and out of parking spaces. It uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system then steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gear as required to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

### Using Active Park Assist



The parking button is near the transmission selector on the center console.

Press the parking button to bring up full screen notifications. Press either the parking button or the soft keys on the display screen to switch between Parallel Park In, Perpendicular Park In or Parallel Park Out parking modes.

### Driving into a Parking Space

**Note:** When parking perpendicularly, the system backs your vehicle into parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.

**Note:** The system does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.

**Note:** The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.

**Note:** The system searches for parallel parking spaces on the passenger side. Press the active park assist button again to make the system search for perpendicular spaces.

2. Use the direction indicator lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

3. Drive your vehicle approximately 1 m (3 ft) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** A tone sounds and a message appears in the information display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.

4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

**Note:** When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to your luggage compartment.

**Note:** When perpendicular parking, the system aligns the front end of your vehicle with the object next to it.

**Note:** When perpendicular parking, if the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

**Note:** When parking is complete the vehicle shifts into park (P).

## Leaving a Parking Space

The system assists leaving only parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the active park assist button.
2. Use the direction indicator lever to choose the direction to leave.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
5. Release the parking brake.

6. Press and hold the active park assist button.
7. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** After the system drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

## Canceling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

**Note:** If you turn the steering wheel or open the driver door the parking assistance also cancels.

## Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the active park assist button.  
The vehicle stops moving until you press and hold the active park assist button again.

**Note:** If you open the passenger or rear doors the parking assistance also pauses.

## Active Park Assist Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause
The system does not correctly operate.	The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to, or in-between. This could occur because of sensors not operating correctly, not enough room for your vehicle, or the traction control is off.
The system does not search for a parking space.	You may have switched traction control off.
	The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
The system does not offer a parking space.	There could be blockage on the sensors. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)



Symptom	Possible Cause
	The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.
	There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
	There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
	The parking space is more than 1.5 m (5 ft) or less than 0.5 m (2 ft) away.
	The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h (22 mph) for parallel parking or greater than 30 km/h (19 mph) for perpendicular parking.
	You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.
The system does not correctly position your vehicle in a parking space.	An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.
	Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be correctly parked.
	Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.
	The tires may not be correctly installed or maintained. For example, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.
	A repair or alteration changes the detection capabilities.
	A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause
	The parking space length or position of parked objects changes after your vehicle passes the space.
	You are using a spare tire or a tire more significantly worn than the other tires.
	The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA (IF EQUIPPED)

- **WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.
- **WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

- **WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.
- **WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** *Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.*

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



The camera is located on the liftgate.



## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

### Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

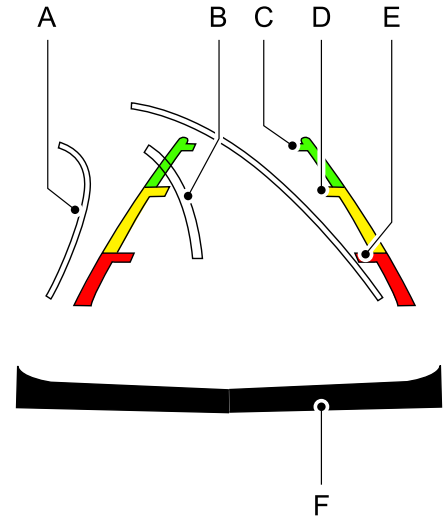
The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

### Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph).



- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone
- F Rear bumper

Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If you change the steering wheel position while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of the vehicle.

### Manual Zoom



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

**Note:** *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

### Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen. See **General Information** (page 111).

### Obstacle Distance Indicator



The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

### Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

---

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P) while the Delay Mode is ON, the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P) on vehicles with automatic transmission.
- You enable the hand brake on vehicles with manual transmission.

# Cruise Control

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h (20 mph).

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color in the information display.

### Changing the Set Speed



Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.



Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** The system remembers the set speed.

# Cruise Control

---

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to adjust your vehicle speed to maintain a set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.

### HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to adjust the speed of your vehicle to maintain a set gap from the vehicle in front of you in the same lane while following it to a complete stop. You can also engage the system to follow a vehicle in front of you and adjust set speed while stopped.

### WHAT IS ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

### WHAT IS INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the cruise set speed is updated to 80 km/h (50 mph) +/- the driver's selected speed offset.

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 275).




**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.





**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)


### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.


 **WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

### When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 276).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:


- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.


**Note:** The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.

**Note:** In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the center line.


### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO


#### Sensor Limitations


 **WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

 **WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.


 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.


 **WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

 **WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

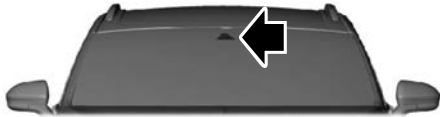
 **WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

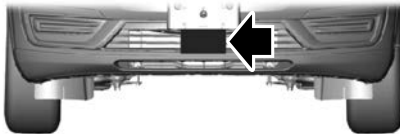
 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

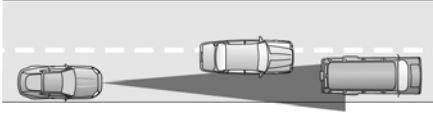
A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 289).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

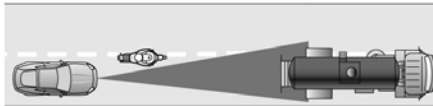
## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### Detection issues can occur:

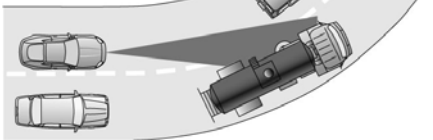
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your

lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 71).

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.
- The engine speed is too low.
- The vehicle speed drops below 20 km/h (12.4 mph).
- You press the clutch pedal for an extended period.

**Note:** *If the engine speed or vehicle speed drops too low, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display. Automatic braking releases.*

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- A sensor is blocked.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

### SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 70).

#### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

#### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

### Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle is at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may turn off or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

### SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

### Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

### SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

**SET+** Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

**SET-**

The set speed adjusts to 30 km/h (20 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

## Manually Changing the Set Speed

**SET+** Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.


**SET-** Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

 Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

### CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

### RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

### RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

### Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying assistance steering torque input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system auto-cancellation.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS - VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



E292667

A bracket appears around the set speed and the detected speed limit sign in the information display.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## System Warnings

If the set speed is increased beyond the speed limit or speed limit plus a positive tolerance value, the set speed indicator flashes.

The warning does not occur if:

- If you override the set speed using the accelerator pedal.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed due to being on a downhill grade.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

Use the touchscreen to select the following:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver assist**.

3. Select **Cruise control**.

4. Select **Normal**.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

Use the following steps in the information display:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Select cruise control.
Mode	Select mode.
Normal	Press the ok button to select normal.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

The controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 70).



Press the button.



## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

The indicator appears in the information display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 283).

**Note:** Adaptive cruise control must be on before you can switch lane centering on.

### Activating Lane Centering

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop-and-go on.
- The vehicle is centered in the lane.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel at all times.
- The system detects both lane markings.

**Note:** If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

When the system is active and the direction indicator is switched on, the system immediately cancels. The system remains in standby mode as long as the direction indicator is engaged. The system automatically re-activates once the vehicle is centered in a lane and the direction indicator is switched off.

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

**Note:** The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.

**Note:** If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.

### System Alerts and Automatic Cancellation

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

When the system cancels due to an external condition, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the information display.

When the system cancels due to an external condition, for example, no lane markings are available and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If you ignore this alert, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering control.

**RES**

If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must contribute to the steering control and press and release the button to regain full system performance.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings are crossed.

**Note:** The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.

### SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.

4. Press **Intelligent**.

### Changing the Set Speed with Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

When intelligent mode is on, the system adjusts the set speed to the speed limit detected by the camera and the speed limit information provided by the navigation system.

**Note:** The set speed adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

**Note:** The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data may be inaccurate or out of date. See **Navigation** (page 467).

**Note:** The system alerts you if the set speed increases beyond the speed limit. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 283).

If the system does not detect a speed limit, the vehicle speed remains at the current set speed.

You can override the set speed at any time. You may need to override or cancel the system in certain situations such as inclement weather or if an incorrect speed is set.

**Note:** The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

### SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Use the following steps in the information display:

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Select cruise control.
Mode	Select mode.
Normal	Select the desired mode.

### Changing the Set Speed with Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control

When intelligent mode is on, the system adjusts the set speed to the speed limit detected by the camera and the speed limit information provided by the navigation system.

**Note:** The set speed adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

**Note:** The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data may be inaccurate or out of date. See **Navigation** (page 467).

**Note:** The system alerts you if the set speed increases beyond the speed limit. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 283).

If the system does not detect a speed limit, the vehicle speed remains at the current set speed.

You can override the set speed at any time. You may need to override or cancel the system in certain situations such as inclement weather or if an incorrect speed is set.

**Note:** The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit sign.

### ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can set a permanent speed tolerance that is above or below the detected speed limit.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.

4. Press **Intelligent**.
5. Press **Tolerance**.
6. Use **+** and **-** to set the tolerance.

**Note:** You cannot set the tolerance more than 30 km/h (20 mph) above or below the recognized speed.

### ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Use the following steps in the information display:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Cruise control	Select Cruise Control.
Tolerance	Select Tolerance.
Use the up and down arrows to set the tolerance.	Select the desired tolerance.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Action
Keep hands on steering wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Lane centring assist not available	Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Resume control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Press the accelerator and follow the prompts.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive cruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL –  
INFORMATION MESSAGES -  
VEHICLES WITH: INTELLIGENT  
ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Intelligent cruise control Speed sign recognition not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.

# Driving Aids

## SPEED LIMITER (IF EQUIPPED)

### Principle of Operation

**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

### Using the System

**Note:** You can intentionally exceed the set speed limit for a short period of time if required, for example, when passing another vehicle.

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E262918

### Switching the System On and Off

**LIM** Press the button to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. Press the button again with the limiter in standby mode to switch the system off.

### Setting the Speed Limit

**SET-** Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the symbol in the information display appears green.

**RES+**

Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

**SET-**

Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

**CNCL**

Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in the information display appears grey.

**RES+**

Press to resume the limiter. The symbol in the information display appears green.

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.

# Driving Aids

## Using the Intelligent Speed Limiter

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** When driving between countries that use different units of measure (miles per hour or kilometers per hour), there may be a delay before the system changes between speed limit units. During this time, the display screen for the speed limiter may differ from the actual posted speed limit. For best performance, make sure that the navigation SD card is in the navigation media port.

You can change the speed limiter mode between manual and intelligent in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

You can select a permanent set speed tolerance that is in addition to the detected speed limit through the tolerance menu in the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

If your vehicle has a traffic sign recognition system, you can automatically limit your vehicle speed to the speed detected by the system.

### Switching the System On and Off

**LIM**

Press the button to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display prompts you to set a speed. If your vehicle has a traffic sign recognition system, you can choose to show the speed the system detects. The intelligent speed limit does not limit vehicle speed in standby mode. The symbol and set speed indication appears grey in standby mode. Press the button again to switch the system off.

### Setting the Speed Limit

**RES+**

Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the detected speed limit. Speed limitation activates and the symbol appears green.

**SET-**

Press with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed. Speed limitation activates and the symbol appears green.

**RES+**

Press and release to increase the set speed in small increments.

**SET-**

Press and release to decrease the set speed in small increments.

**CNCL**

Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in the information display appears grey.

**RES+**

Press to resume the limiter. The symbol in the information display appears green.

The speed limit automatically changes to the speed the traffic sign recognition system detects. The limiter does not react to speed limits shown with a supplementary sign. If there is no speed limit information available, the limit switches to standby mode.



## Driving Aids

### Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Firmly depress the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

### System Warnings


If the set speed is at a lower value than your current vehicle speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds if you are continuously exceeding the set speed.

If you accidentally exceed the set speed, the set speed indicator in the information display flashes and an audible warning tone sounds.


If you intentionally exceed the set speed, only the set speed indicator in the information display flashes.


If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.


### DRIVER ALERT


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.


 **WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

 **WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

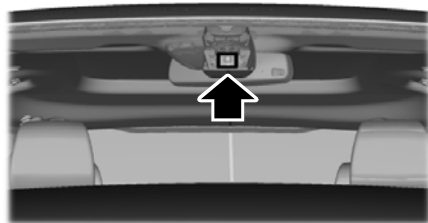
 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**Note:** If enabled in the menu, the system activates at speeds above 64 km/h (40 mph). When below the activation speed, the information display informs the driver that the system is unavailable.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions. For example, bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.

# Driving Aids



E249505

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs, including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness reduces below a certain threshold, the system alerts you using a tone and a message in the information display.

## Using Driver Alert

### Switching the system on and off

You can switch the system on or off through the information display. See **General Information** (page 111). When active, the system monitors your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

## System Warnings

**Note:** *The system does not issue warnings below approximately 64 km/h (40 mph).*

The warning system has two stages. First, the system issues a temporary warning stating that you need to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time. If the system detects your driving alertness reduces further, it may issue another warning which remains in the information display for a longer time. Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

## System Display

When active, the system runs automatically in the background and only issues a warning when required. See **General Information** (page 111).

**Note:** *If you receive a warning you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is within the typical range.*

**Note:** *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 64 km/h (40 mph), the alertness level changes to grey for a short time and the information display informs you that the system is unavailable.*

## Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

## Driving Aids

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror. The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph). You can view the system status in the information display.

**Note:** *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the direction indicator on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

### Switching Lane Keeping System On or Off



Press the button on the direction indicator stalk.

### Lane Keeping System Settings

The system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

# Driving Aids

**Note:** The system remembers the last selected settings when you start your vehicle and turns on at the start of any trip.

## Intensity Setting

Provides steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

**To adjust the steering wheel vibration intensity setting, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:**

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Lane keeping system	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Intensity	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** This setting does not affect the aid mode.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## Aid Mode

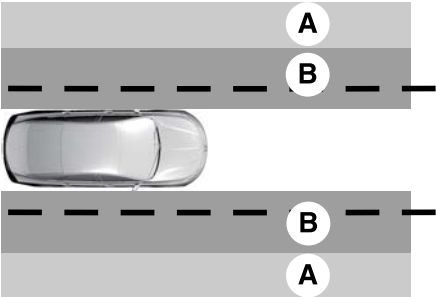
Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

**Note:** When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

## Alert and Aid Mode

Provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.

# Driving Aids



- A Aid mode.
- B Alert and Aid mode.

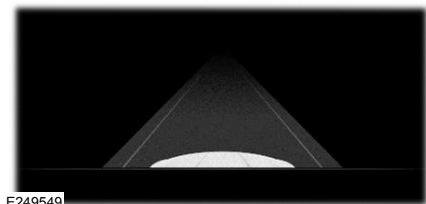
**Note:** The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

To change between the lane keeping system modes, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Driver assist.	Press the menu button.
Lane keeping system	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Mode	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the <b>OK</b> button.

# Driving Aids

## Lane Keeping System Display



When the system is off, the system indicator or the lane markings do not display.

## Aid Mode



If you switch Aid Mode or Alert and Aid Mode on, arrows also display with the lane markings.

## Lane Keeping System Warning Lamps and Indicators

### Lane Keeping Aid Warning Lamp



It illuminates when the system activates.

## Black and White Information Display

Indicator	System Status
Gray.	Unavailable.
White.	Available.
White and inverted.	Temporary steering assistance.
White and flashing.	Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration.

# Driving Aids

## Color Information Display

Indicator	System Status
Gray.	Unavailable.
Green.	Available.
Amber.	Temporary steering assistance.
Red.	Temporary steering assistance and steering wheel vibration.

## Lane Keeping System Messages

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Blind Spot Assist (If Equipped)

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system and the two systems activate and deactivate together using the lane keeping button.

During intentional lane changes the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct you back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

All system limitations present in the basic Lane Keeping System also apply to Blind Spot Assist.

**Note:** *Blind spot assist only works if it detects lane markings on both sides.*

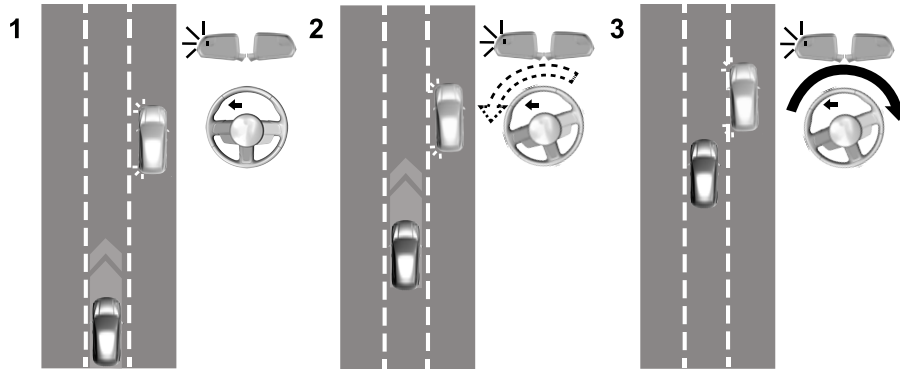
**Note:** *Blind spot assist requires the driver's hands to be on the wheel at all times.*

**Note:** *Blind spot assist does not function with one or both rear radar sensors blocked or faulty.*

**Note:** *Blind spot assist does not function when you connect a trailer to the vehicle.*

For more information on display messages See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 300).


## Driving Aids




### System Display

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 300).

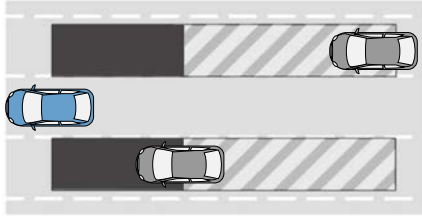
### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



# Driving Aids



The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

## Using the Blind Spot Information System

### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

## System Lights and Messages

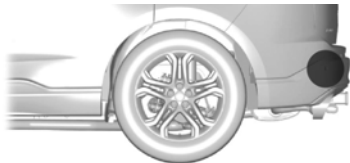


When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

**Note:** The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

# Driving Aids

## Blocked Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

**Note:** *Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.*

**Note:** *Blocked sensors could affect system performance.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 130). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

## System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. See **Information Messages** (page 130).

## Blind Spot Information System Information Messages

Message	Action
BLIS and cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *If you deactivate the Blind Spot Information System but Blind Spot Assist remains active the following messages may reveal.*

# Driving Aids

## Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If necessary, consult the Blind Spot Assist section. See **Lane Keeping System** (page 294).

### Switching the System On and Off


You can switch the system off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.


**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.*

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

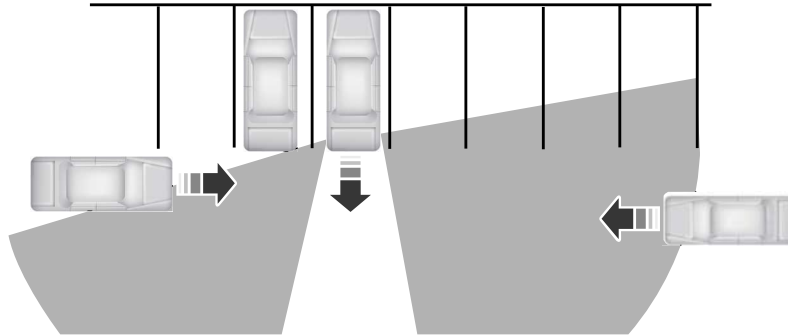
## Driving Aids

The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

### Using Cross Traffic Alert

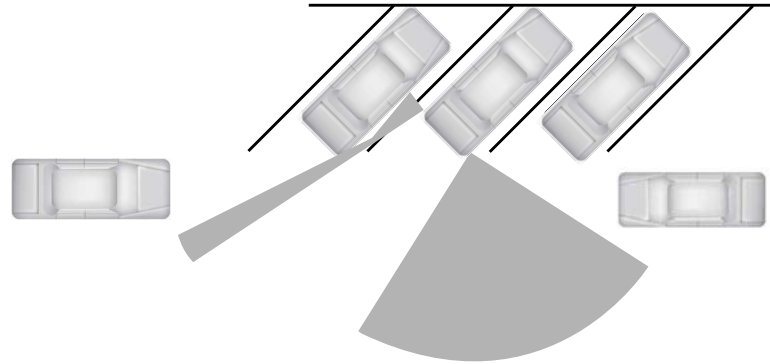
The system detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 6 km/h (4 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).



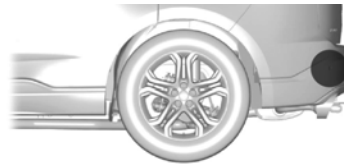
The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

## Driving Aids



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

### Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

## Driving Aids

**Note:** *Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.*

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

### Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- The sensors are blocked.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h (4 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

### Cross Traffic Alert Behavior When Trailer is Attached

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer tow under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the information display.

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 300).

### Switching the System On and Off

To switch the system on or off, adjust the setting. Depending on your vehicle options, the setting could be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

**Note:** *The system turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.*

### Cross Traffic Alert Indicator



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

**Note:** *If arrows do not display, a message appears in the information display.*

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.*

# Driving Aids

## Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages

Message	Action
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION (IF EQUIPPED)

### Principle of Operation



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** Always replace headlamp bulbs with those specifically designed for your vehicle. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is designed to detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

# Driving Aids

The sensor is behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current maximum speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.

## Using Traffic Sign Recognition

### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels that you can set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

### System Display



The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in four stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they are greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they are deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

### Switching Speed Warning On and Off

You can switch the speed warning on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## STEERING

### Electric Power Steering



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.



## Driving Aids

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. You must adapt your speed and driving behavior to reduced steering assist. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will neither lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool down and steering assist will return to normal.

### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles moving in a different direction or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

## Driving Aids

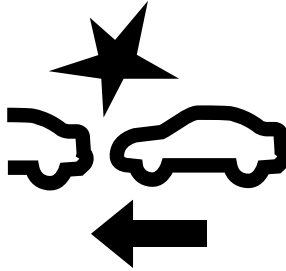
### Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

The system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a cyclist, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake Support.
3. Active Braking.



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake support:** The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. Brake support does not apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Active braking:** Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

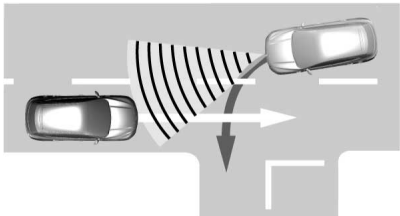
**Note:** Brake support and active braking are active at speeds up to 120 km/h (75 mph). If the vehicle comes with a radar sensor, included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and active braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.

**Note:** If you perceive pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.

**Note:** The system turns off when you select the deep snow/sand drive mode.

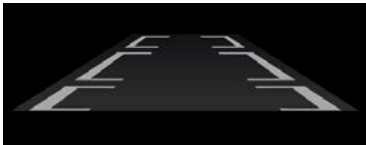
If your vehicle comes with lane change warning and aid, the pre-collision assist system may operate in a scenario where you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

# Driving Aids



## Distance Indication and Alert (If Equipped)

This feature provides the driver with a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The information display screen shows one of the graphics that follow.



Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Grey	>25 m (82 ft)	>0.9sec
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Yellow	17–25 m (56–82 ft)	0.6sec — 0.9sec
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Red	<17 m (56 ft)	<0.6sec

## Driving Aids

**Note:** Distance indication and alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when adaptive cruise control is active.

### Evasive Steering Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle or a vehicle traveling in the same direction as your vehicle, the system is designed to help you steer around the vehicle.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- The pre-collision assist system detects a vehicle ahead and starts to apply active braking.
- You turn the steering wheel in an attempt to steer around the vehicle.

After you turn the steering wheel, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the vehicle. After you pass the vehicle, the system applies steering torque in the opposite direction to encourage you to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the vehicle.

**Note:** The system does not automatically steer around a vehicle. If you do not turn the steering wheel, the system does not activate.

**Note:** The system does not activate if the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small and a crash cannot be avoided.

### Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

Depending on your vehicle options, the pre-collision assist settings may be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

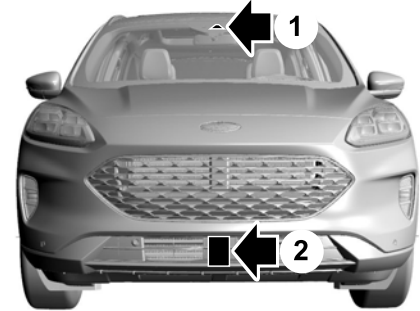
The following settings can be adjusted:

- You can change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three settings.
- You can switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, you can switch active braking on or off.
- If required, you can switch evasive steering assist on or off.

**Note:** Active braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you switch active braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

### Blocked Sensors



- 1 Camera.
- 2 Radar sensor (if equipped).

# Driving Aids

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. If your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, it is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a

blocked sensor or camera, the pre-collision assist system may not function or performance may reduce. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

## Camera Troubleshooting

Cause	Action
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

# Driving Aids

## Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)


Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.


**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the camera's field of view repaired.


**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.


## Driving Aids


### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST - VEHICLES WITH: PRE- COLLISION ASSIST


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

### Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

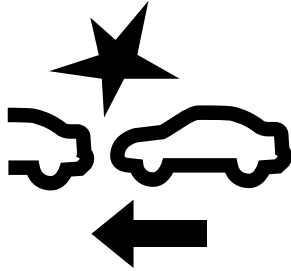
The system is active at speeds above approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h (50 mph).



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

1. Alert
2. Brake Support
3. Active Braking

## Driving Aids



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake support:** The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. Brake support does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Active braking:** Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

**Note:** Brake support and active braking are active at speeds up to 120 km/h (75 mph). If the vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor, included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and active braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.

**Note:** If you perceive pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.

**Note:** The system turns off when you select the deep snow/sand drive mode.

### Distance Indication and Alert (if Equipped)

This feature provides the driver with a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The information display screen shows one of the graphics that follow.



**Note:** Distance indication and alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when adaptive cruise control is active.



# Driving Aids

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphics	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Grey	>25 m (82 ft)	>0.9sec
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Yellow	17–25 m (56–82 ft)	0.6sec — 0.9sec
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal	Red	<17 m (56 ft)	<0.6sec

## Evasive Steering Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a stationary vehicle or a vehicle traveling in the same direction as your vehicle, the system is designed to help you steer around the vehicle.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- The pre-collision assist system detects a vehicle ahead and starts to apply active braking.
- You turn the steering wheel in an attempt to steer around the vehicle.

After you turn the steering wheel, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the vehicle. After you pass the vehicle, the system applies steering torque in the opposite direction to encourage you to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the vehicle.

**Note:** *The system does not automatically steer around a vehicle. If you do not turn the steering wheel, the system does not activate.*

**Note:** *The system does not activate if the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small and a crash cannot be avoided.*

## Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

Depending on your vehicle options, the pre-collision assist settings may be in the following:

- Information display. See **General Information** (page 111).
- Touchscreen. See **Settings** (page 478).

The following settings can be adjusted:

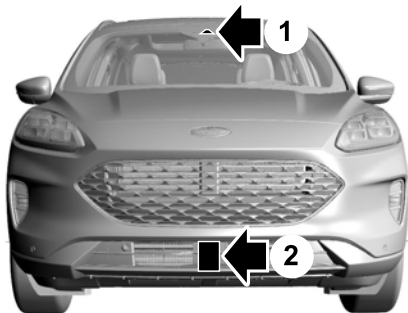
- You can change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- You can switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, you can switch active braking on or off.
- If required, you can switch evasive steering assist on or off.

**Note:** *Active braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *If you switch active braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

# Driving Aids

## Blocked Sensors



- 1 Camera.
- 2 Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. If your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, it is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the pre-collision assist system may not function or performance may reduce. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

## Camera Troubleshooting

Cause	Action
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

## Driving Aids

### Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display screen.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	The Pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist automatically reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.
Radar is out of alignment due to a front-end impact.	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle comes with a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following systems:

- Electric power-assisted steering system adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **Steering** (page 308).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 254).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.
- Electric vehicle mode selections may be limited. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

**Note:** *Not all settings may be available.*

**Note:** *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.*

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

**Note:** *Drive mode changes may not be available when the ignition is off.*

**Note:** *Button icon shown may vary from your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Selected drive mode displays in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 130).*



To select drive modes, use the console mounted control.

## DRIVE MODES

### DEEP SNOW/SAND (If Equipped)



Use this mode to aid you in getting your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

# Drive Mode Control

**Note:** The intent of your all-wheel drive vehicle is not for off-road use. The all-wheel drive feature allows for driving on relatively level surfaces, obstruction free and similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in other conditions could lead to excessive stress that could result in damage not covered by the warranty.

**Note:** This mode is not intended for driving on snowy roads. For snowy roads use slippery mode.

**Note:** Using deep snow/sand mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear. This mode is for slippery and loose surfaces.

## ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

## NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle.

## SLIPPERY



For less than ideal road conditions, such as snow or ice covered roads. Use this mode for crossing terrain with a firm surface covered with loose, wet or slippery material. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and, if provided with an automatic transmission, optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

**Note:** Using slippery mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire wear. This mode is for slippery surfaces.

## SPORT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling, and response. This mode increases throttle response and provides a sportier steering feel. If equipped with automatic transmission, the powertrain system provides improved gear holding, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

# Efficient Drive Mode

## WHAT IS EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE

Efficient drive mode is a predictive coach that uses the vehicle navigation data. It provides predictive route information to help you drive more efficiently by indicating when you can release the accelerator pedal.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

## SWITCHING EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Display settings**.
3. Select **Eco coach**.
4. Switch **Eco advice** on or off.

## DISPLAYING THE EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Driver assist..**

## TRIP SUMMARY

### HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as five colored bars. The bars travel from left to right as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The bars indicate the average efficiency level for your driving behavior, acceleration, deceleration, speed, gear shifting and compliance score during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

**Note:** *The compliance score assesses how well you follow the efficient drive mode indicator.*

**Note:** *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a bar for gear shifting.*

## VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco coach**.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Press the **OK** button.

## Efficient Drive Mode

### VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select **ECO**.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Eco coach**.
5. Switch **Eco advice** on.
6. Switch the engine off.

### VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN



Repeatedly press the button to scroll through the available drive modes.

The button is on the center console.

1. Select **ECO**.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Display settings**.
4. Select **Eco coach**.
5. Switch **Eco advice** on.
6. Switch the engine off.

### EFFICIENT DRIVE MODE INDICATORS



It illuminates grey when the system recommends you to decelerate.

It changes color when you start to decelerate.

The additional display ring next to the efficient drive mode indicator can provide information about speed limit, intersection, freeway ramp, roundabout, stop sign, slope, curve or crosswalk.

## Current Highway Information

---

### WHAT IS CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

### ENABLING CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network** (page 439).

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.
8. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

### CHECKING CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Information**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.

### CHECKING CURRENT HIGHWAY INFORMATION STATUS - VEHICLES WITH: 12.3 INCH INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY SCREEN

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Local hazard information**.



# Load Carrying

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

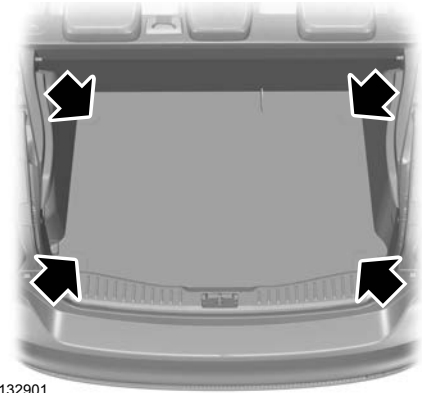
**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

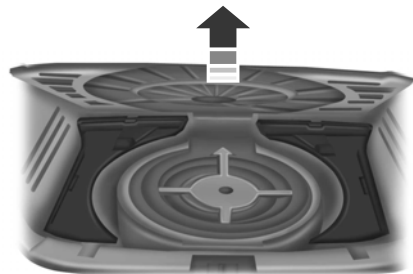


E132901

# Load Carrying

## REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

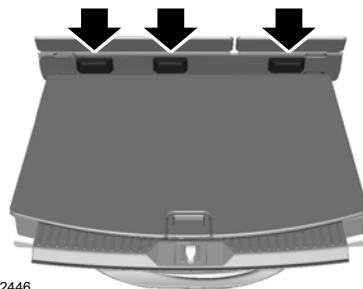
### Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

## Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)

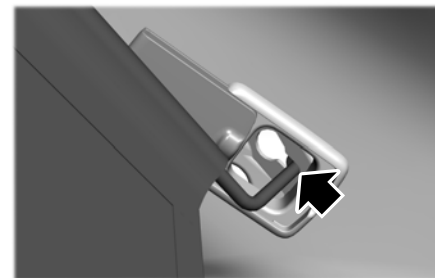


E142446

Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

## CARGO NETS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Installing the Net



1. Push the ends of the upper bar toward each other and insert them into the retainers on the headliner. Push the bar forward into the narrow section of the retainers.

## Load Carrying

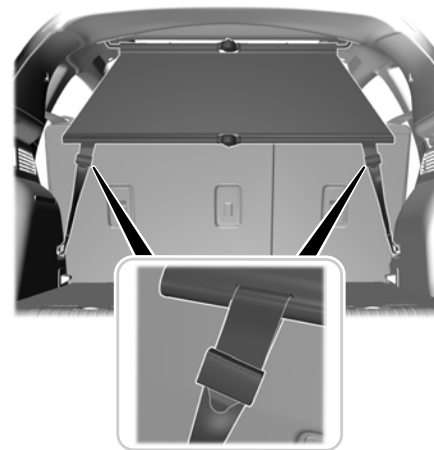


2. Attach the net to the luggage anchor points.



3. Tighten the belts.

### Removing the Net



1. Release the belts.
2. Remove the net from the luggage anchor points.
3. Remove the upper bars.

# Load Carrying

## LUGGAGE COVERS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

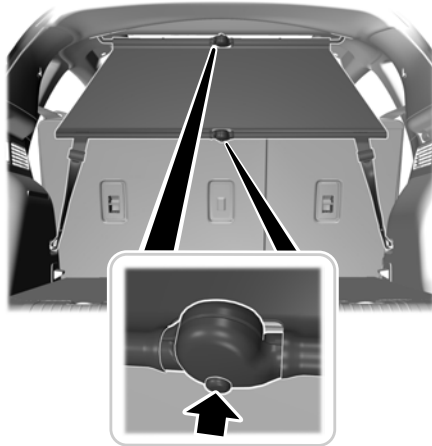


**WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

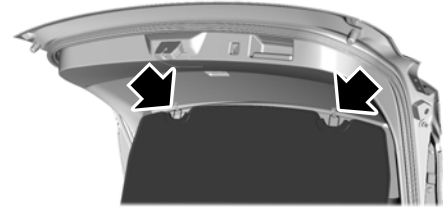
Use the luggage cover to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

### Removing the Luggage Cover

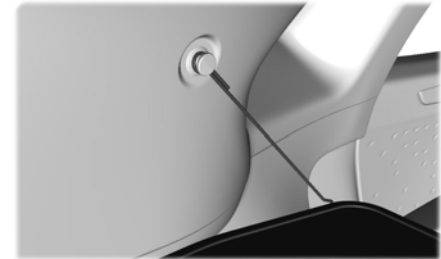
1. Open the liftgate.



4. Push the release buttons to fold the cargo net.



2. Detach the retaining clips on the liftgate trim panel.



3. Detach the retaining cord on the luggage compartment trim panel.

## Load Carrying

**Note:** Support the luggage cover when detaching the retaining clips.

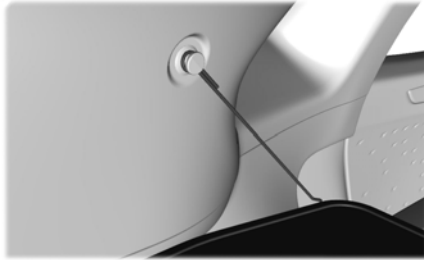
4. Lift the luggage cover out of the liftgate.

### Stowing the Luggage Cover

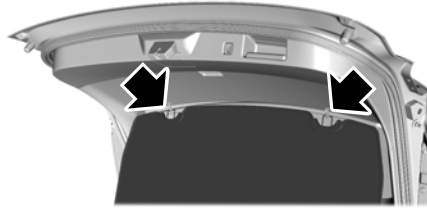
The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.

### Installing the Luggage Cover

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Attach the retaining cord to the luggage compartment trim panel.



3. Insert the retaining clips into the liftgate trim panel.

**Note:** Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining clips.

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

**Note:** Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

# Load Carrying

## Maximum Roof Load Amounts

**Note:** *The maximum roof load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

Weight on Crossbar (Total)	Maximum Roof Load
Vehicles equipped with Panoramic Roof	60 kg (130 lb)
Vehicles without Panoramic Roof	75 kg (165 lb)

## DOG GUARD

A dog guard compliant to ISO 27955 is available as an aftermarket accessory from our authorized dealers.

# Towing

## TOWING A TRAILER



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar (3 psi) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 332).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep slope.

**Note:** We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

**Note:** The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.


Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behaviour to the load of the trailer.

# Towing

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft).

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

 **WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it when it begins.*


**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*


**Note:** *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability. If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control warning lamp flashes and a message appears in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 130). Slow your vehicle down, pull safely to the side of the road and check for correct load distribution. See **Load Carrying** (page 325).

You can switch this feature off in the information display. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.


## TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: DETACHABLE TOW BALL

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

### Detaching the Tow Ball Arm

 **WARNING:** Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

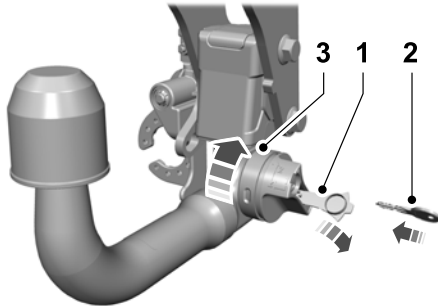


# Towing

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

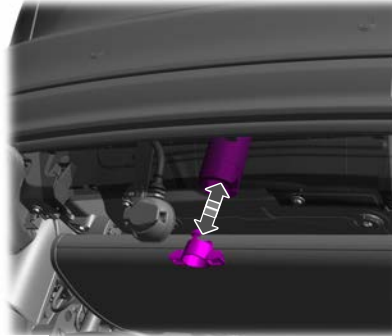
Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.



1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Push the handwheel inward and turn it clockwise.

**Note:** The mark on the handwheel turns from green to red.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.



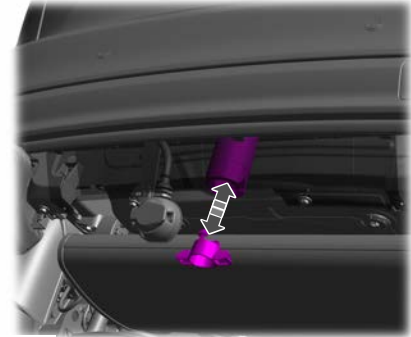
E265433

7. Insert the blanking plug.

## Attaching the Tow Ball Arm

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

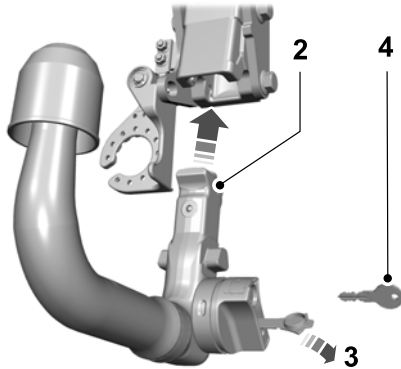
**Note:** You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked, with the mark on the handwheel red. If the mark on the handwheel is amber, push the handwheel in and turn 180 degrees clockwise to unlock.



E265433

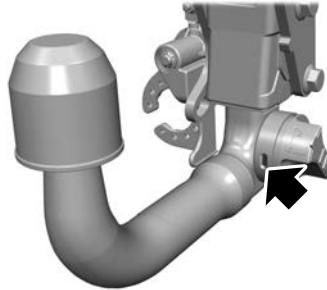
1. Remove the blanking plug.

# Towing



## Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks

After you attach the tow ball arm, check the following:



1. The mark on the handwheel is green.
2. You have locked the handwheel.
3. You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

**Note:** The mark on the handwheel turns from red to green.

3. Remove the protective cap.
4. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.
5. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

## Towing

### TOW BALL - VEHICLES WITH: RETRACTABLE TOW BALL

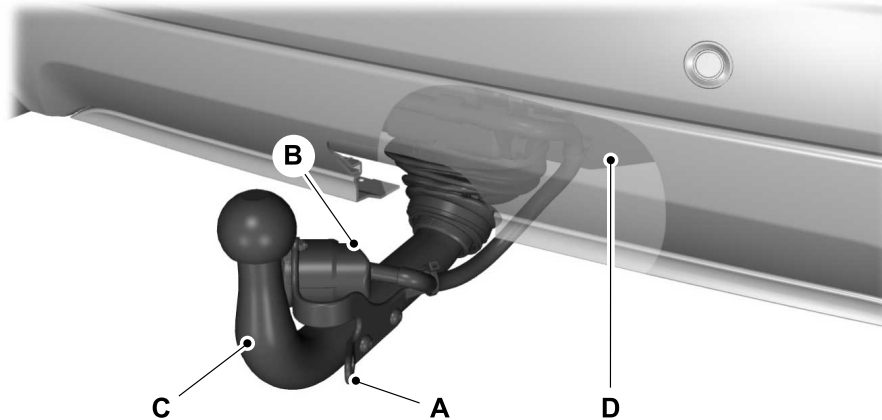


**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest

rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



- A Trailer safety cable attachment point.
- B Trailer wiring connection socket.

# Towing

- C Tow ball arm in tow position.
- D Tow ball arm in stowed position.

Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm or mechanism.

## Deploying the Tow Ball Arm

Do not use your foot or any tools to deploy the tow ball arm.

Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is deploying to the released position.

Do not use the tow ball arm if no tones sound when deploying the tow ball arm or when the tow ball arm locks into position. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The tow ball arm does not deploy if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving.
- The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
- The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
- The rear liftgate is closed.



E237201

1. Press the button. It is on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

**Note:** The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.



2. Press the button again within four seconds to deploy the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the tow position.

**Note:** The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm deploys and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

# Towing

**Note:** If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without deploying the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

**Note:** A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

If the deploy process is interrupted, for example tow ball arm movement is obstructed or the power supply is lost, the system must be reset. To reset the system fully repeat the process.

Check the following:

- Make sure the tow ball arm is fully locked. It must not move if jerked or when you attach a trailer.
- The LED is not flashing and no warning tones sound.

**Note:** If these cannot be met, do not use the tow ball arm. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Retracting the Tow Ball Arm

You must retract the tow ball arm when not in use.

Do not use your foot or any tools to retract the tow ball arm.

Do not touch the tow ball arm when it is retracting to the released position.

Never retract the tow ball arm with a trailer attached. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

The tow ball arm does not retract if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving.
  - The trailer wiring connection socket has a trailer wiring plug attached to it.
  - The vehicle battery is not fully charged.
  - The rear liftgate is closed.
1. Disconnect the trailer wiring plug and unhitch the trailer or load carrier.



E237201

2. Press the button. It is on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

**Note:** The LED on the button illuminates and a double tone sounds.



3. Press the button again within four seconds to retract the tow ball arm to the released position. The tow ball arm moves into the stowed position.

**Note:** The LED on the button flashes and a series of tones sound when the tow ball arm retracts and reaches the released position. The LED on the button stops flashing and a double tone sounds when the tow ball arm locks into position.

# Towing

**Note:** If you do not press the button again within four seconds, the system signals completion without retracting the tow ball arm. If the LED rapidly flashes and a high pitch tone sounds, repeat the process.

**Note:** A warning tone sounds for up to 30 seconds if the tow ball arm remains in an unlocked position.

## Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Clean the trailer wiring connection socket regularly and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you retract the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, MMT6



**WARNING:** You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



**WARNING:** Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



**WARNING:** When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 349).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h (31 mph). See **Transporting the Vehicle** (page 348).

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

## Driving Hints

### REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE



**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 97).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

1. Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.

3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
5. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure. See **General Information** (page 391).
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.

- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.
- Shift into higher gears as early as possible to reduce engine RPM.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or your vehicle is slowing down.
- Avoid driving in lower temperatures, driving short distances, or driving on hilly terrain.

### COLDWEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

## Driving Hints

### PRECONDITIONING YOUR VEHICLE FOR COLD WEATHER DRIVING - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

- Fully charge your vehicle before heading out into cold weather. This helps maximize your driving range.
- Plug in your vehicle to maintain the best battery operating temperature before driving.
- When your vehicle is plugged in it uses energy from your charging source to heat the cabin and ensure maximum battery charge level.
- To maximize battery charge level, use heated seats and a lower climate control temperature setting.

**Note:** You can precondition your vehicle prior to your departure using the FordPass app.

### BREAKING-IN

#### Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

#### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

### DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

**Note:** Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights



## Driving Hints

### FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

# Roadside Emergencies

## HAZARD FLASHERS

**Note:** The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.



The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash.
- Press the button again to switch them off.

## FUEL SHUTOFF



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**Note:** When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.

**Note:** In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

If your vehicle has a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.
5. If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

If your vehicle has a push button start system:

1. Press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal and **START/STOP** to switch on your vehicle.

3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press **START/STOP** to switch off your vehicle.
4. You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and **START/STOP**, or press **START/STOP** without pressing the brake pedal.
5. If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE -EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

## Roadside Emergencies

**⚠ WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**⚠ WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**⚠ WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**Note:** Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

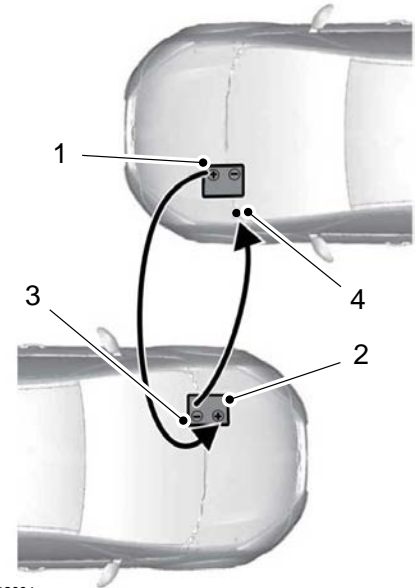
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

### Connecting the Jumper Cables

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow that manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** In the illustration that follows, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

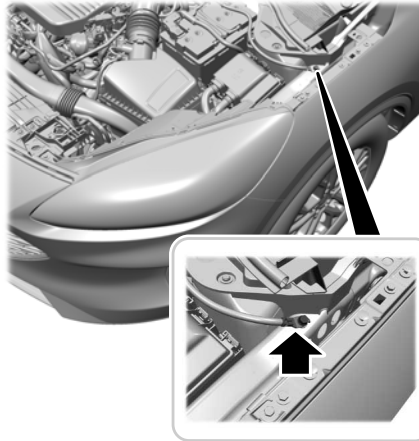


E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

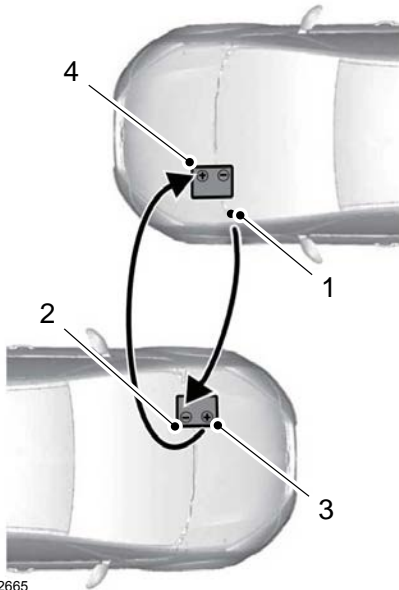
### Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

### Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

## Roadside Emergencies



E142665

1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

### JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**Note:** Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

**Note:** Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

**Note:** Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

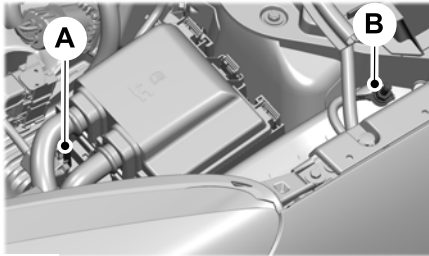
## Roadside Emergencies

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

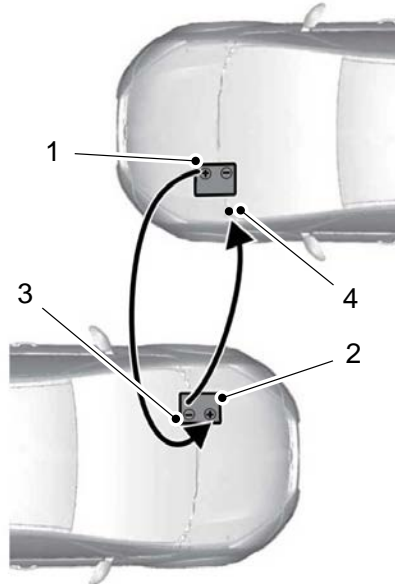
Your vehicle has a 12-volt battery that has two prongs accessible from under the hood. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can by using these prongs. The illustration below shows the two connector prongs used for jump starting your vehicle.



- A. Positive prong (+).
- B. Negative prong (-).

**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow that manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** In the illustration that follows, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.



E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery. Pull the red rubber boot backward.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and the fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

## Roadside Emergencies



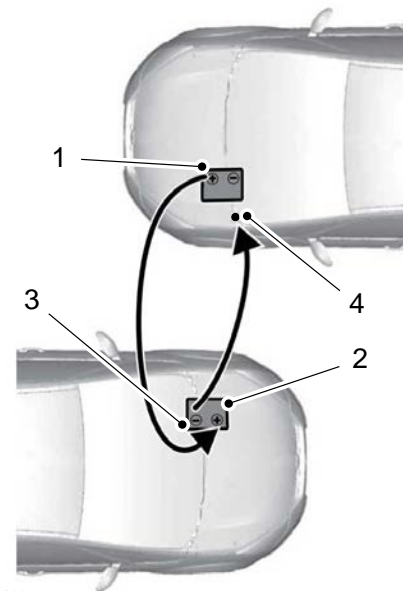
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

### Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

### Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.



E142664

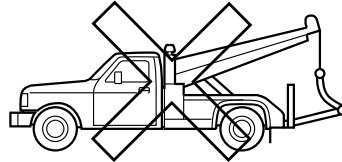
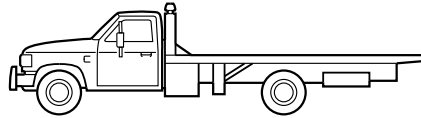
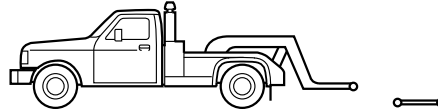
1. Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.
5. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

After disconnecting the jumper cables, let the disabled vehicle sit in Ready to Drive mode for several minutes to charge the 12-volt battery. The disabled vehicle can charge the 12-volt battery even if the gasoline engine is off. The 12-volt battery receives power from the high-voltage battery.

### TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

It is acceptable to have your front-wheel drive vehicle towed from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.



## Roadside Emergencies

Towing an all-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, all-wheel or four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

### TOWING POINTS

Due to local market requirements in some countries, some vehicles may have a recovery hook.

#### Recovery Hook Location

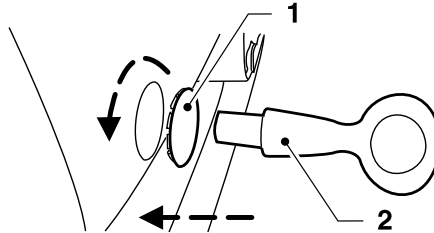
If your vehicle has a screw-in recovery hook, it is in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.

If your vehicle does not have a recovery hook, you can purchase one from your dealer.

#### Installing the Recovery Hook

There is an installation point for the recovery hook behind the fascia.

**Note:** *The screw-in recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the recovery hook is fully tightened.*



E146284

Using a suitable tool, such as a screwdriver, pry open the cover (1). Use the recessed portion of the cover with the notch. Screw in the recovery hook (2).

#### Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels

See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 338).

# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E265025

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The engine compartment fuse box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

When you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 379).

Lift the release lever at the rear of the cover to remove it.

**Note:** Replace fuses with the same type and rating. See **Changing a Fuse** (page 360).



# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Fuel filter heater (diesel).
2	40 A	Left-hand heated windshield.
3	10 A	Not used (spare).
4	60 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
5	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
6	40 A	Supplemental heater (gas, diesel).
7	40 A	Right-hand heated windshield.
8	—	Not used.
9	60 A	Glow plug module (diesel).
10	30 A	Starter motor.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	15 A	Powertrain control module (diesel).
16	—	Not used.
17	20 A	Steering column lock.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
20	5 A	Dosing control module (diesel).
21	5 A	Fuel operated heater.
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid).
23	5 A	Charge port light ring (hybrid).
24	20 A	Amplifier.
25	20 A	Pressure line heater (diesel).
26	10 A	Reluctant dosing control module (diesel).
27	20 A	Tank heater (diesel).
28	10 A	Brake on-off switch. Headlamp switch pack.
29	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid).
30	10 A	Transmission oil pump (hybrid).
31	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	10 A	Front parking aid camera. Rear view camera.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Blind spot information system. Adaptive cruise control.
34	10 A	Headlamp leveling.
35	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
36	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid). Transmission control module (diesel).
37	20 A	Horn.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	15 A	Not used (spare).
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid).
44	40 A	Trailer tow module.
45	30 A	Passenger power seat.
46	20 A	Not used (spare).
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	40 A	Anti-lock brake control valves.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	Rear console USB charger.
53	10 A	Battery charge control module (hybrid).
54	—	Not used.
55	20 A	Transmission control module (diesel).
56	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid).
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid).
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	—	Not used.
61	20 A	Rear cargo power point.
62	20 A	Not used (spare).
63	30 A	Not used (spare).
64	30 A	Power liftgate.
65	—	Not used.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
66	20 A	Rear heated seat module.
67	20 A	Fuel operated heater.
68	5 A	Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor (gas).
69	15 A	Port fuel injectors (gas, hybrid).
70	20 A	Front console power point.
71	20 A	Media bin power point.
72	20 A	Rear window wiper.
73	—	Not used.
74	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
75	10 A	Not used (spare).
76	30 A	Heated backlight.
77	—	Not used.
78	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
79	10 A	Headlamp washer.
80	20 A	Fuel pump.
81	10 A	Rear window washer pump.
82	40 A	Not used (spare).



## Fuses

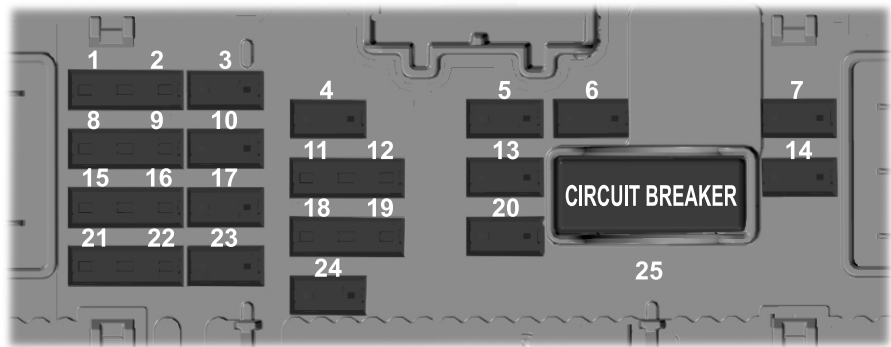
Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
83	—	Not used.
84	40 A	Driveline control module.
85	5 A	Rain sensor.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.

**Note:** *Spare fuse amperage may vary.*

### Passenger Compartment Fuse Box

The fuse box is below the glove compartment.

# Fuses



Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Rear heated seats.
3	10 A	Parking assist control module.
4	10 A	Ignition switch.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof. DC inverter.

## Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Electrochromatic mirror. Image processing module A. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Telematics control unit module.
11	5 A	Power liftgate. Hands-free liftgate actuation module.
12	5 A	Central security module.
13	15 A	Driver door lock. Child safety locks.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Not used (spare).
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Receiver transceiver module. Integrated control panel.
18	7.5 A	Head up display module. Wireless accessory charging module.
19	7.5 A	Battery backed sounder.

# Fuses

Fuse Location	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Gateway module. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Not used (spare).

**Note:** Spare fuse amperage may vary.

## CHANGING A FUSE

### General Information



If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse.

### Engine Compartment Fuse Box



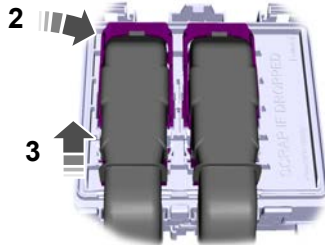
**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E217331

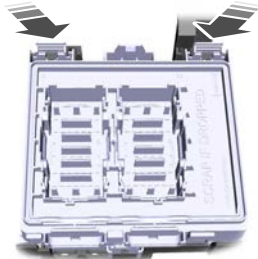
# Fuses

1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



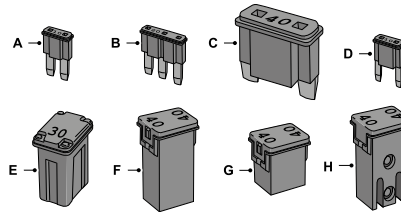
E253689

2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

## Fuse Types



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Do not work on a hot engine.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

### Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

### Check When Refueling

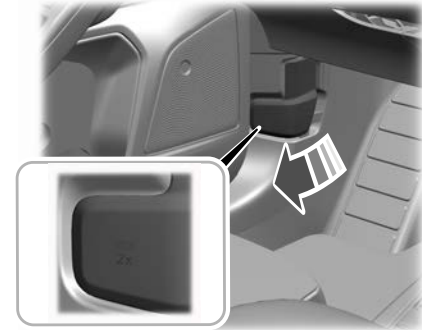
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 381).
- Tire pressures. See **General Information** (page 391).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 391).

### Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 409).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.

**Note:** *This action releases the hood latch.*

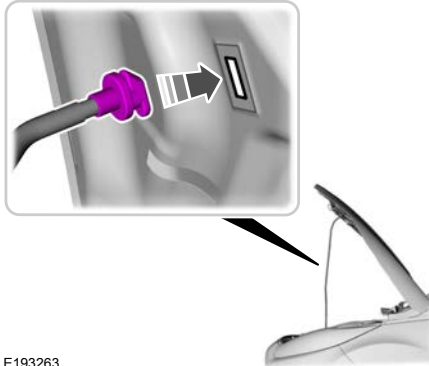
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

**Note:** *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

## Maintenance

**Note:** There is no secondary latch under the hood.



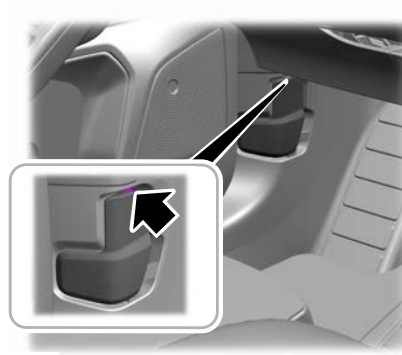
E193263

5. Support the hood with the strut.

**Note:** Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

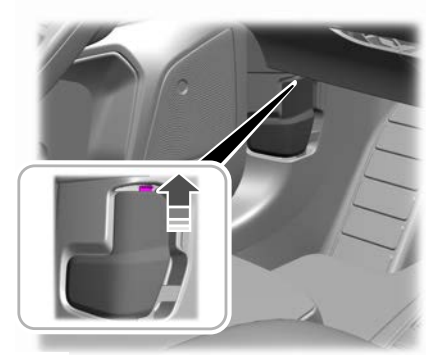
### Opening the Hood if the Passenger Door cannot be Opened

1. Unlock the right-hand front door using the key and access the left-hand front footwell. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 56).



E263801

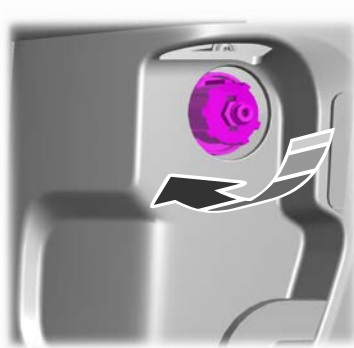
2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown.



E263802

3. Gently pry the hood release lever securing clip upward.

# Maintenance



E263803

4. Use a suitable tool, for example a hexagonal socket, and turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.
5. Let the hood release mechanism completely retract.

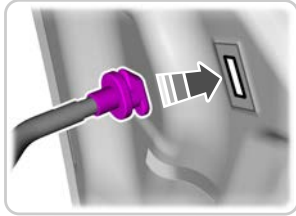
**Note:** This action releases the hood latch.

6. Turn the hood release mechanism clockwise until you feel a strong resistance for a second time.

**Note:** This action fully releases the hood.

7. Open the hood.

**Note:** There is no secondary latch under the hood.



E193263



8. Support the hood with the strut.

**Note:** Hold the yellow section of the hood strut.

9. Reinstall the hood release lever. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure the hood release lever securing clip is fully engaged.

## Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 25–35 cm (10–14 in).

**Note:** Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

## Warning Lamps and Indicators



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

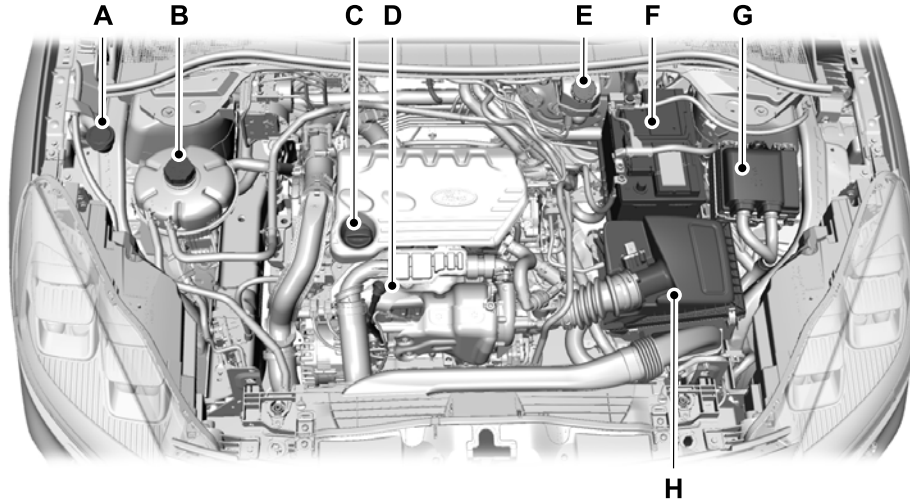
## Information Messages

Message	Action
Bonnet open	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



- A Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 381).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- C Engine oil fill cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).

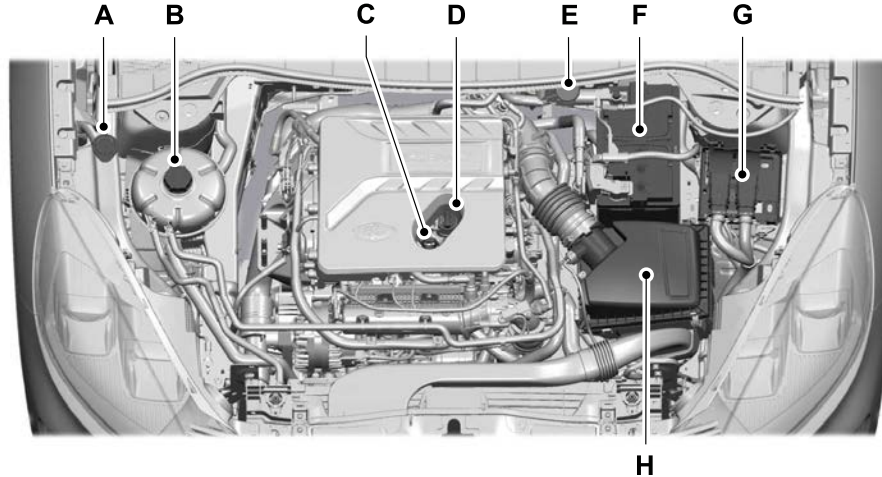
# Maintenance

---

- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 379).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 350).
- H Air cleaner - No maintenance necessary.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



- A Windshield washer fluid. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 381).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 372).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).

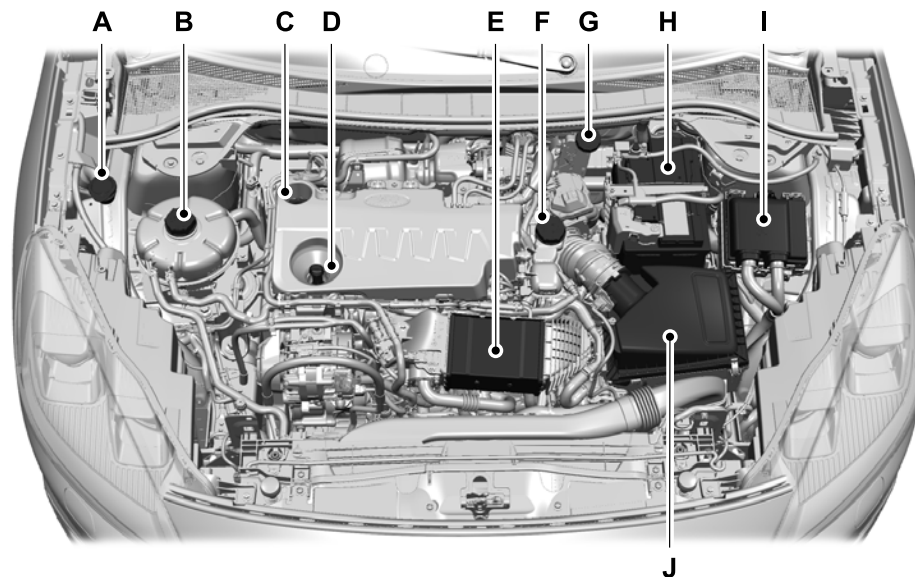
# Maintenance

---

- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 379).
- G Power distribution box. See **Changing a Fuse** (page 360).
- H Air filter.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



# Maintenance

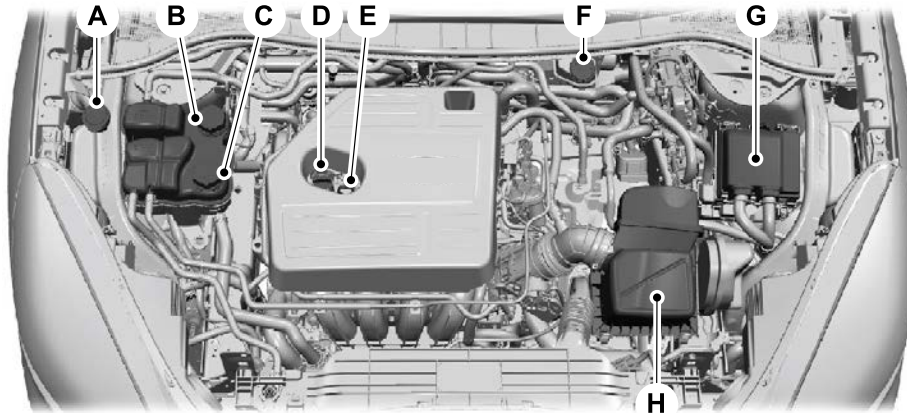
---

- A Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 381).
- B Engine coolant reservoir<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- C Engine oil filler cap<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).
- D Engine oil dipstick<sup>1</sup>. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).
- E Water charge-air-cooler. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- F Water charge-air-cooler coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- G Brake fluid reservoir<sup>1</sup>. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).
- H Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 379).
- I Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 350).
- J Air cleaner assembly.

<sup>1</sup> The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

## Maintenance

### UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

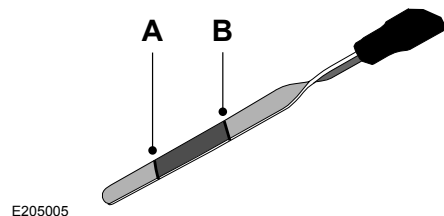


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 381).
- B Low temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- C High temperature coolant cap. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 374).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 373).
- E Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 373).

# Maintenance

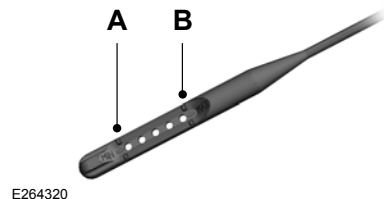
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).
- G Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 350).
- H Air filter assembly.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK



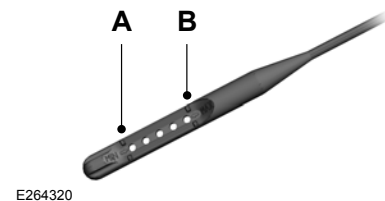
- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK

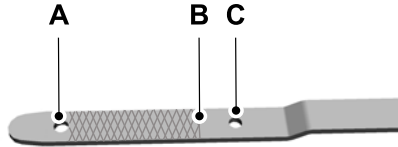


- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.



## Maintenance

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

### ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

### Adding Engine Oil



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications.
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

# Maintenance

## OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET - 1.5L ECOBOOST™/2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)


Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.




### From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil life	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to reset	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.  Reset successful

Message	Action and description
	When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%.  Remaining oil life {##0}%  If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process.  Not reset  Reset cancelled

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

 <b>WARNING:</b> Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.
---

 <b>WARNING:</b> Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.
 <b>WARNING:</b> To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.
 <b>WARNING:</b> Do not add coolant further than the <b>MAX</b> mark.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

# Maintenance

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Take care not to put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir or windshield washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

# Maintenance

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, qualified personnel:

1. Must drain the cooling system.
2. Chemically clean the coolant system.
3. Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Dispose of used engine coolant in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection.
- Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

## Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411).

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

## How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

# Maintenance

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to

maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.

2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

# Maintenance

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## BRAKE FLUID CHECK



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

## Maintenance



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** If the brake fluid level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir, it is acceptable.

**Note:** If the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 411).

### Brake Fluid Service Interval

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

For detailed interval information, see Scheduled Maintenance in your Owner's Manual or your local maintenance guide.

### CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 378).

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 365).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to your vehicle this may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.



# Maintenance

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

**Note:** Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 89).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.
- Steering Angle Sensor.

**Note:** To calibrate the steering angle sensor, drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) for a minimum of 2 km (1.2 mi). Make sure to drive straight ahead for a minimum of 30 seconds. Several vehicle functions are disabled and a warning light could appear until the sensor is calibrated.

**Note:** For flexible fuel vehicles, if you are operating on E85, you could experience poor starts or an inability to start the engine, and driveability problems until the fuel trim and ethanol content have been relearned. Drive the vehicle at least 16 km (10 mi) to completely relearn the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical and Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Vertical and horizontal aim is adjustable. We recommend that you see an authorized dealer.

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

# Maintenance

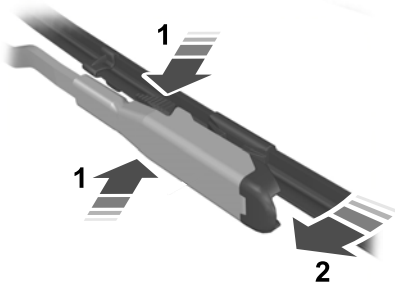
## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Clean the wiper blades and the windshield to improve wiper performance.

**Note:** Do not move the wiper arm when the ignition is on as it may cause damage to the wiper motor.

Replace the wiper blades at least annually for optimum performance.

### Front Wiper Blades



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

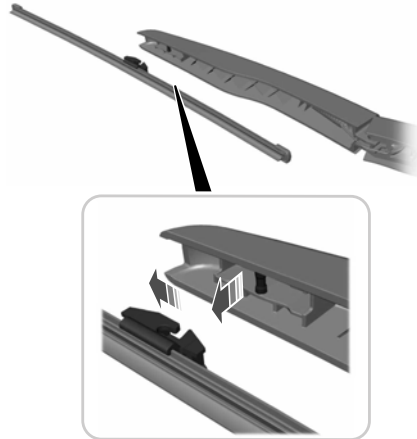
**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

### Rear Window Wiper Blade



1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade when lifting the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Replacing Headlamp Bulbs

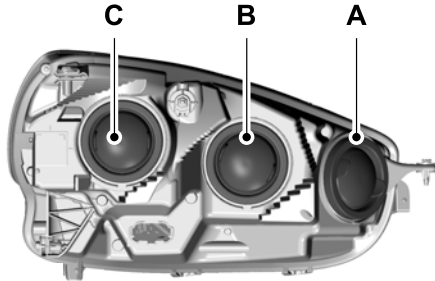
**WARNING:** Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

**Note:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time you operate the headlamps.

**Note:** If you accidentally touch the bulb, clean it with rubbing alcohol before using it.

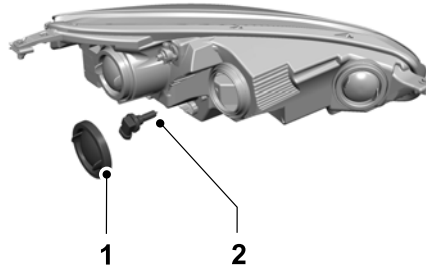
# Maintenance

## Headlamp



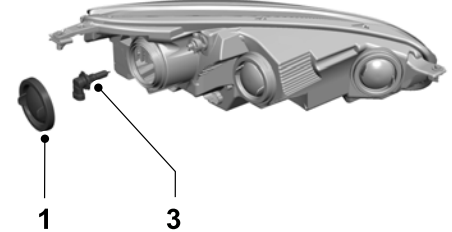
- A Park/Turn lamp
- B High beam headlamp
- C Low beam headlamp

## High beam headlamp



1. Remove service cap.
2. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

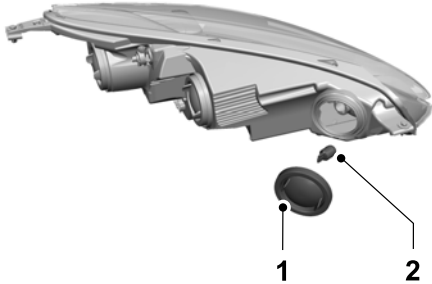
## Low beam headlamp



1. Remove service cap.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

## Park/Turn lamp



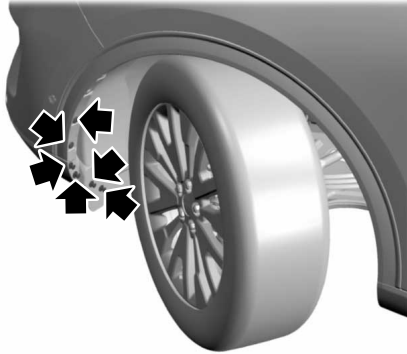
1. Remove service cap, if applicable.
2. Remove bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## LED Bulbs (If Equipped)

LED lamps are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## Replacing Fog Lamp Bulbs

1. If you are replacing the driver side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. If you are replacing the passenger side bulb, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left.



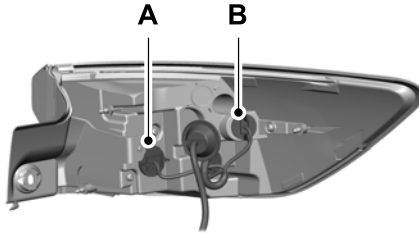
2. Remove the six lower splash shield push pins and pull the splash shield back.



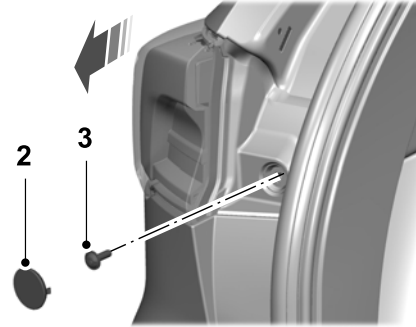
3. Disconnect the bulb electrical connector.
4. To remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly, turn it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
5. To install, perform these steps in reverse order.

## Maintenance

### Replacing Direction Indicator Bulbs



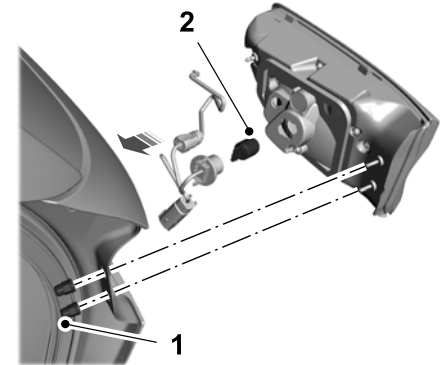
- A Direction Indicator
- B Side marker



1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the bolt cover using a standard flat tip screwdriver.
3. Remove the bolt from the lamp assembly.
4. Gently pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle in an outboard direction.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.
6. Remove the direction indicator bulb by turning the lower bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

7. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

### Replacing Reverse Lamp Assembly Bulbs



1. Remove the screws with a flathead screwdriver and pull the lamp assembly away from the vehicle.
2. Remove the bulb by turning the lower bulb socket counterclockwise. Gently pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

---

## **Replacing License Plate Lamp Bulbs**

License plate lamps are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## **Replacing High-Mount Brake Lamp Bulbs**

High-mount stop lamps are LED and are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

We recommend that you wash your vehicle regularly with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a neutral pH car shampoo.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout to avoid paint surface damage.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.
- When filling with AdBlue®, remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Suntan lotion and insect repellent can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come into contact with your vehicle, wash them off as soon as possible.

## Using a Car Wash

**Note:** *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

**Note:** *Switch the blower motor off to prevent contamination of the cabin air filter.*

Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Remove any exterior accessories, including the antenna, before using an automatic car wash.

## Cleaning the Exterior Lamps

**Note:** *Do not scrape the exterior lamps lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

**Note:** *Do not wipe the exterior lamps when they are dry.*

## Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces.

Do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than recommended.

Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

## Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

## Cleaning Plastic Exterior Parts

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts.

## CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

# Vehicle Care

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

**Note:** Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

**Note:** We recommend distilled water when cleaning.

### Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

**Note:** Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.

**Note:** To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

## Seatbelts



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

**Note:** Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

### Leather Interior (If Equipped)

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.



# Vehicle Care

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use a leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

## Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

**Note:** Do not steam clean.

**Note:** To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

## Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

**Note:** Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

## Rear Windows

**Note:** Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

**Note:** Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## Mirrors

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

## Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

## Vehicle Care

---

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

### CLEANING THE WHEELS

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

**Note:** *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

**Note:** *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

**Note:** *Some automatic car washes could cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you complete the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use our surface wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent damage.

### BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold. See **Tire Pressures** (page 407).

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

## TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare wheel and tire. In these cases it will be supplied with a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire. Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

**Note:** The kit may be used as an air compressor for tire inflation maintenance when the sealant bottle is not assembled to the compressor.

The kit is located under the floor in the luggage compartment.

The kit consists of an air compressor to inflate the tire and a sealing compound in a canister that will effectively seal most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit will provide a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

**Note:** Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

### General Information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) may not be sealable. Tire sidewall damage cannot be temporarily repaired.

**Note:** Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures located within the tire tread with the kit.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

- Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers.
- Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed.
- Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 80 km/h (50 mph).

**Note:** Do not drive further than 200 km (124 mi). Drive only to the closest authorized Ford dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

### Tips for use of the kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

- Read all instructions and cautions fully.
- Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights.

## Wheels and Tires

- Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle doesn't move unexpectedly.
- Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire.
- When using the kit, if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area, leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.
- Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating.
- Never leave the kit unattended when it is operating.
- Keep the kit away from children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -30°C (-22.0°F) and 70°C (157.9°F).
- Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date which is printed on the top of sealant bottle.
- After sealant use, an authorized Ford dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.
- Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD, and DVD player operation.

### What to do when a tire is punctured

A tire puncture within the tire's tread area can be sealed in two stages with the kit.

- In the first stage, the tire will be reinflated with a sealing compound and air. After the tire has been inflated, you will need to drive the vehicle approximately 6 km (4 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
- In the second stage, you will need to check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

### First stage: reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air



**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.



**WARNING:** Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.



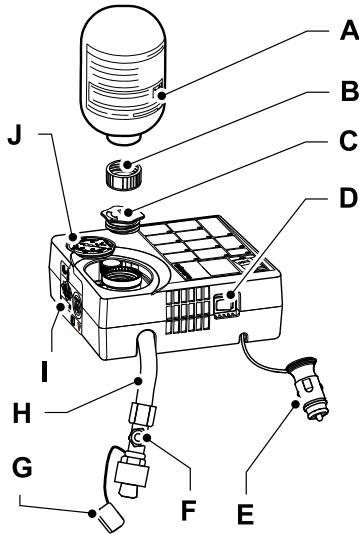
**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic. Turn the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and turn the engine off. Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is located in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

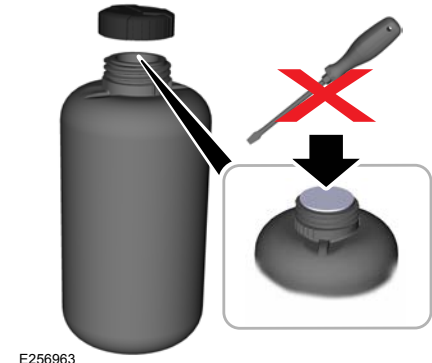
## Wheels and Tires



- A Sealant bottle.
- B Bottle cap.
- C Orange cap.
- D On/Off switch.
- E Power plug with cable.

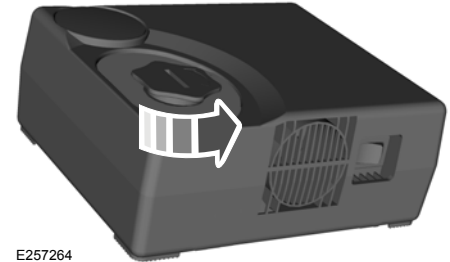
- F Pressure release valve.
- G Protective cap.
- H Air/Sealant Hose.
- I Speed Restriction Label.
- J Pressure gauge.

1. Remove the warning label (I) showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the side of the compressor and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
2. Pull out the hose (H) and the power plug with cable (E) from beneath the kit.
3. Unscrew the sealant bottle cap (B). Do not remove or puncture the seal on the bottle.



E256963

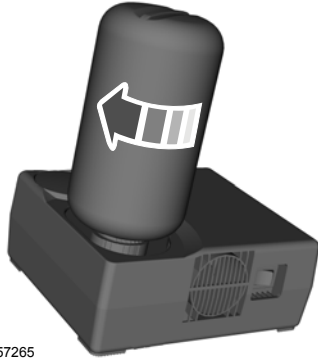
4. Unscrew the orange cap (C).



E257264

## Wheels and Tires

5. Screw the sealant bottle (A) clockwise into the bottle holder unit fully tight.



E257265

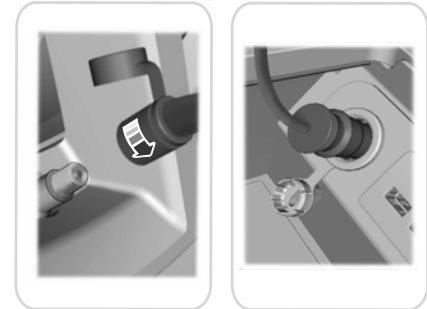
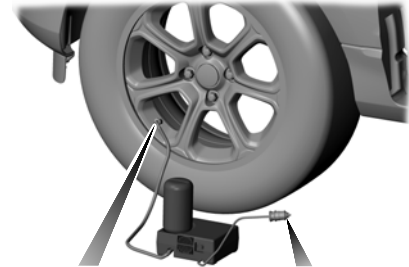
**Note:** Attaching the sealant bottle to the compressor pierces the seal. Do not loosen the bottle as the sealant could escape.

6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch (D) is in the OFF position and the pressure release valve (F) is closed by turning it fully clockwise.



E262403

8. Pull the protective cap (G) from the hose (H). Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise. Tighten the connection securely.

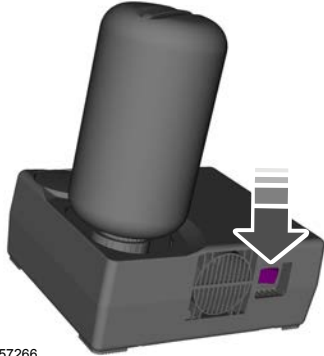


E261901

9. Plug the 12 volt DC power point connector (E) into the 12 volt DC socket in the vehicle. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 179).
10. Start the engine.

## Wheels and Tires

11. Switch the compressor on.



E257266

12. Inflate the tire for no longer than 15 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch (D) to the OFF position and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge (J).

**Note:** If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 15 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. Stop and call roadside assistance.

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after a few seconds.

**Note:** After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.

13. Remove the power plug (E) from the 12-volt power point.
14. Unscrew the hose (H) from the tire valve and put the protective cap (G) back in place. Replace the valve cap on the tire valve.

**Note:** Some residual sealant fluid may drip or briefly spray out the hose (H) while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.

15. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the compressor. This avoids leakage of sealant residue.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure after driving the vehicle a short distance.

17. Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 6 km (3.7 mi) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
18. After 6 km (4 mi), stop and check the tire pressure.

**Note:** If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance.

### Second stage: checking tire pressure

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:



1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

# Wheels and Tires

2. Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.
3. With the compressor off, the gauge of the kit will display the tire inflation pressure.

**Note:** If you are proceeding from the First stage: Reinflating the tire with sealing compound and air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 1.4 bar (20 psi), stop and call roadside assistance. If tire pressure is above 1.4 bar (20 psi), continue to the next step.

4. If required, turn on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label located on the driver's door or door jamb area. The tire pressure should be checked with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.
5. Unscrew the compressor hose from the valve stem and re-install the valve cap. Leaving the sealant bottle attached to the compressor unit, safely store in your vehicle the tire sealant and inflator kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap.

## What to do after the tire has been sealed

**Note:** After the sealing compound has been used, the maximum vehicle speed is 80 km/h (50 mph) and the maximum driving distance is 200 km (124 mi). The sealed tire should be inspected immediately.

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 200 km (124 mi) by performing the procedure from Second stage: Checking tire pressure.

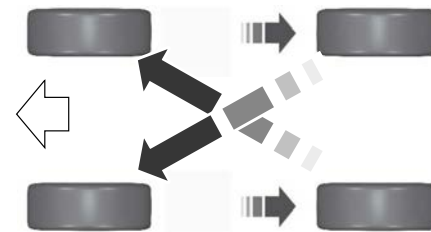
Regularly check the tire pressure until the sealed tire is repaired or replaced by a tire specialist. Before the tire is removed from the trim, you must inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant.

After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister and hose. Sealant canister and hose service kits can be obtained at an authorized Ford dealer. Empty sealant canisters may be disposed of at home. However, canisters still containing liquid sealant should be disposed of by your local authorized Ford dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

## TIRE CARE

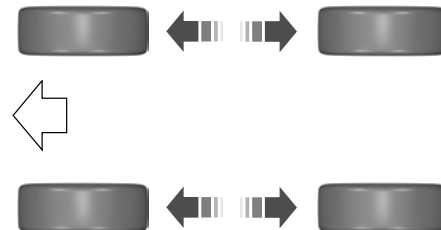
**Note:** Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

### Non-directional tires



E142547

### Directional tires



E70415



# Wheels and Tires

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).



**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads. Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when

temperatures drop to about 7°C (45°F) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and ice conditions. Like any tire, summer tire performance is affected by tire wear and environmental conditions. If you must drive in those conditions, we recommend using Mud and Snow (M+S, M/S), All-season or Snow tires.

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above -7°C (19°F). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below -7°C (19°F). If the tires have been subjected to -7°C (19°F) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 5°C (41°F) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

## USING WINTER TIRES



**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Wheels and Tires



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 407).

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- Use 10 mm snow chains or cables on front axle with tires 225/65R17 or 225/60R18 only.
- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Do not use snow chains or cables on 225/55R19 or 245/45R20 tires.

- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- When driving with tire cables do not exceed 48 km/h (29.8 mph) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use cables on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

## Wheels and Tires

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

**Note:** *You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it may not function.*



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** Each road tire comes with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See **When Inflating Your Tires** in this chapter.

## Changing Wheels With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When changing the wheels on your vehicle, the tire pressure monitoring system needs to relearn the tire pressure sensors. To achieve this perform the following:

1. Make sure all tires are inflated to the proper pressure. If not, inflate the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes.
3. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** later in this section.

4. The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes above 40 km/h (25 mph).

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System



The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the

light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

## When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When you replace one of your tires with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you to have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

## When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

## Wheels and Tires

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see <b>When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed</b> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Wheels and Tires

## When Inflating Your Tires



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 0.14–0.28 bar (2–4 psi) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 0.21 bar (3 psi) for a drop of -1.1°C (30.0°F) in ambient temperature. This lower

pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

### Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

## Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display.
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

# Wheels and Tires

## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

**Note:** Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

### Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that we provided with the vehicle. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, replace it instead of repairing it.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels.

When driving with a dissimilar spare tire, do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:


- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.


## Wheels and Tires


- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.


### Tire Change Procedure


 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.


 **WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.


 **WARNING:** Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications. If you are unsure if the jack capacity is adequate, contact the authorized dealer.


 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.


 **WARNING:** Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.


 **WARNING:** Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.

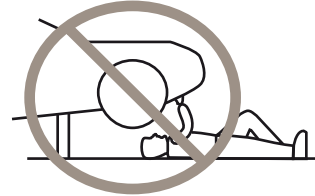
 **WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.


 **WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other locations, you could damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

 **WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

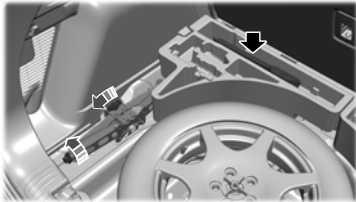


## Wheels and Tires

**Note:** The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.

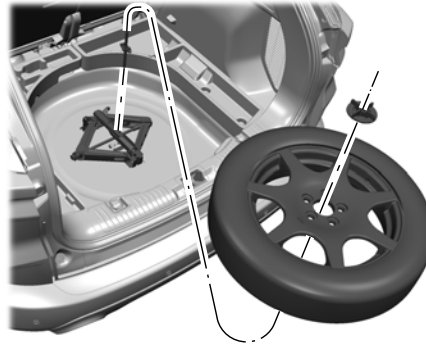
1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off.
3. Lift and remove the carpeted cargo area floor to access the spare tire and jack.
4. Remove the wing nut that secures the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire and jack kit from the spare tire compartment.

**Note:** On Plug-in and Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles you can find the jack and wrench to the left of the spare tire.

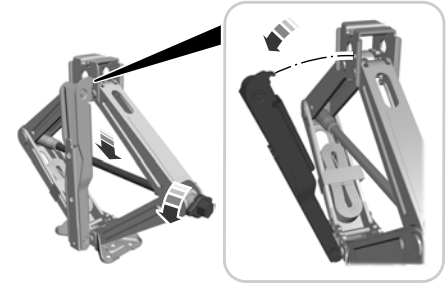


**Note:** On Non Plug-in or Full Hybrid Electric Vehicles you can find the jack and wrench under the spare tire.

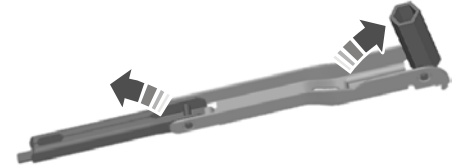
6. Remove the jack.



7. Turn the jack hex nut drive screw counterclockwise to detach the lug wrench from the jack. This lowers the jack and releases the mechanical lock.

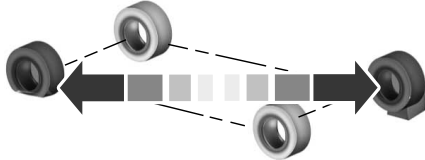


8. Unfold the lug wrench for use.



9. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.

## Wheels and Tires



10. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

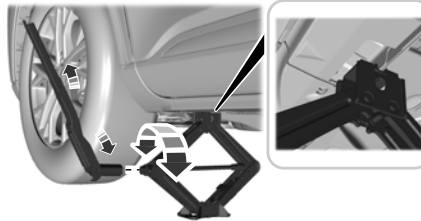
**Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

11. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



E145908

12. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.

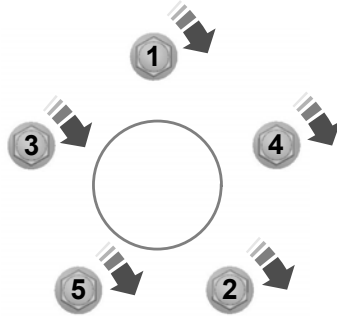


13. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

**Note:** For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

14. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
15. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
16. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 409).

# Wheels and Tires



## Stowing the flat tire

You cannot store the full-sized road wheel in the temporary spare tire well.

1. Find the flat tire retainer strap tucked inside the jack channel. Lower the carpeted load floor.
2. Stow the flat tire in the cargo area on the load floor with the wheel facing up. Secure the flat tire with the retainer strap by following the next steps.



3. Locate the rear left side and right side cargo tie-down rings. Push the loop end of the retainer strap through one cargo tie-down ring. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.
4. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
5. Locate the cargo tie-down in the opposite rear corner of the cargo area. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.



6. Secure the flat tire by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

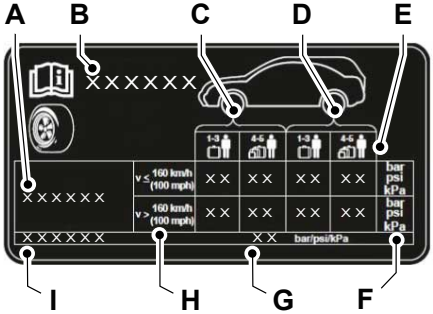
## TIRE PRESSURES

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

**Note:** You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

# Wheels and Tires



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load or trailer tow	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
225/65 R17 <sup>1</sup>	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
225/60 R18 <sup>1</sup>	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
225/55 R19	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)
245/45 R20	2.4 bar (35 psi)	2.1 bar (30 psi)	2.4 bar (35 psi)	3 bar (44 psi)

<sup>1</sup> Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

# Wheels and Tires

## Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not switch off stability control or select sport mode, when using a temporary spare wheel or after inflating a tire using the temporary mobility kit.

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T165/70R17	4.2 (60)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

## LUG NUTS



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels

without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

## Lug Nut Torque

Nm ( lb.ft)
135 (100)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

## Wheels and Tires

---

### Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

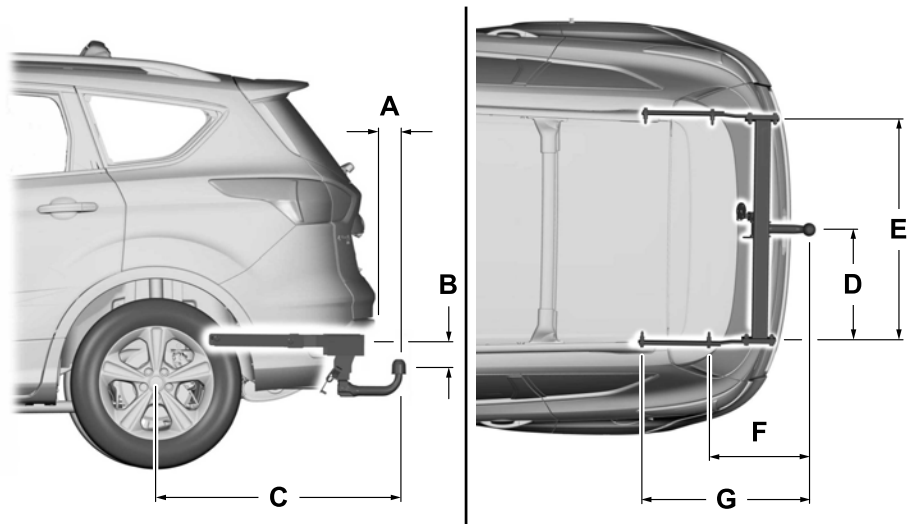
# Capacities and Specifications

## VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Dimension Description	All
Maximum length.	4,614–4,626 mm (181.7–182.1 in)
Overall width excluding mirrors.	1,882 mm (74.1 in)
Overall width including mirrors.	2,147 mm (84.5 in)
Overall height.	1,658–1,690 mm (65.3–66.5 in)
Wheelbase.	2,710 mm (106.7 in)

## Capacities and Specifications

### TOWBAR DIMENSIONS





## Capacities and Specifications

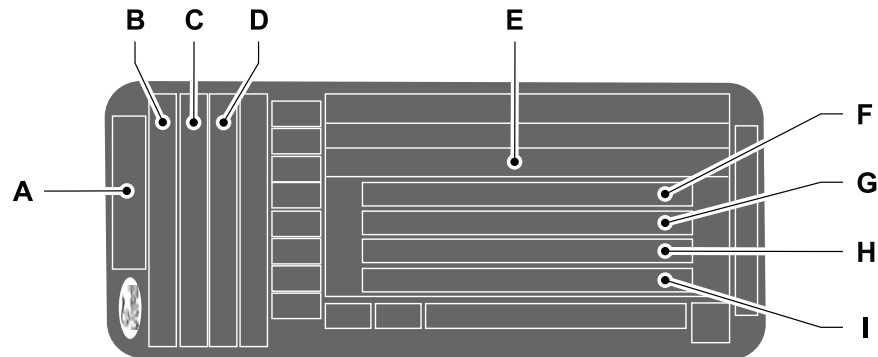
Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm (in)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	95 (3.7)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	165.8 (6.5)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,033 (40.7)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	530 (20.9)
E	Distance between side members.	1,060 (41.7)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	308.5 (12.1)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	393.5 (15.5)

### Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

kg (lb)
100 (220.5)

## Capacities and Specifications

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.

## Capacities and Specifications

- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

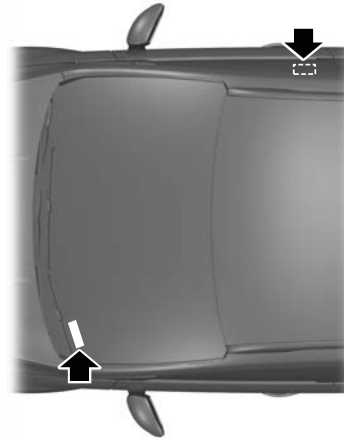
The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

**Note:** *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

**Note:** *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER-EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

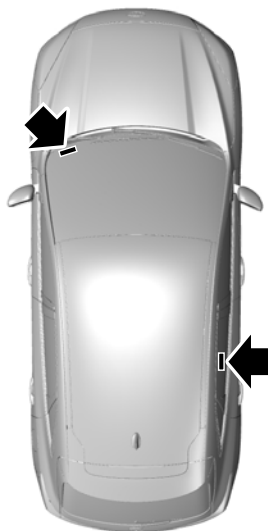
The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E87496

## Capacities and Specifications

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the rear seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

### CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DIESEL

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## Capacities and Specifications

### Manual Transmission

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.7 L (1.80 qt) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA, JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

### Engine Coolant

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Automatic transmission.	8.8 L (9.3 qt)
Manual transmission.	8.7 L (9.2 qt)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

## Engine Oil

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet our specifications or ACEA C5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.2 L (6.6 qt)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C952-A1

## Capacities and Specifications

### Fuel Tank

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	54 L (11.9 gal)

### Hydraulic Brake System

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

#### Locks

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.



## Capacities and Specifications

### Manual Transmission

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.59 L (1.68 qt) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA, JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

### Engine Coolant

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	7.2 L (7.6 qt)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

## Engine Oil

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.05 L (5.3 qt)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

# Capacities and Specifications

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	54 L (11.9 gal)

## Hydraulic Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

### Locks

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L, DIESEL

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

## Capacities and Specifications

### Manual Transmission

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.75 L (1.85 qt) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

#### Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Oil 75W LV JU7J-M2C200-AA, JU7J-M2C200-CA	WSS-M2C200-E1

### Engine Coolant

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	2.2 L (2.3 qt)
High temperature cooling circuit.	9.5 L (10.0 qt)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

## Engine Oil

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet our specifications or ACEA C2.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.37 L (6.7 qt)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

# Capacities and Specifications

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All,	54 L (11.9 gal)

## Hydraulic Brake System

### Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

### Locks

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

## Washer Reservoir

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A



## Capacities and Specifications

### CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/ PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Use oil and fluid that meets the defined

#### Engine Coolant

##### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
HEV-Low temperature cooling circuit.	4.7 L (5.0 qt)
HEV-High temperature cooling circuit.	9.1 L (9.6 qt)
PHEV-Low temperature cooling circuit.	6.2 L (6.6 qt)
PHEV-High temperature cooling circuit.	9.6 L (10.1 qt)

specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.

- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

##### Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium FU7J-19544-xx	WSS-M97B44-D

# Capacities and Specifications

## Engine Oil

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use

motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.4 L (5.7 qt)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

## Fuel Tank

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
HEV.	54 L (11.9 gal)
PHEV.	41.9 L (9.2 gal)

## Hydraulic Brake System

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

**Note:** We recommend using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## Locks

## Materials

Name	Specification
Penetrating Fluid	-

## Washer Reservoir

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash FU7J-19C544-AA/BA/DA/EA/GA/HA	WSS-M14P19-A

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

The chart that follows specifies the replacement bulbs. The correct bulbs do not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty, and provide quality bulb burn time.

### Exterior Lamps

Function	Trade number
Base headlamp low beam.	H7
Base headlamp high beam.	H9
Base headlamp turn lamp.	PWY24 Amber
Base headlamp daytime running lamps, position. <sup>1</sup>	LED
Optional headlamp. <sup>1</sup>	LED
Base fog lamp.	H8

## Capacities and Specifications

Function	Trade number
Optional fog lamp. <sup>1</sup>	LED
Tail, brake lamp. <sup>1</sup>	LED
Rear turn lamp.	T20 Amber
Backup, reverse lamp.	T20
Rear fog lamp.	P21W
License plate lamp. <sup>1</sup>	LED
High-mount brake lamp. <sup>1</sup>	LED

<sup>1</sup> To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.

### Interior Lamps

Function	Trade number
All interior lamps. <sup>1</sup>	LED

<sup>1</sup> To replace these lamps, see your authorized dealer.

**Note:** To replace all instrument panel lights, see your authorized dealer.

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L DIESEL

### NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
5.2–4.4 (54–64)	4.3–3.7 (66–76)	4.6–4 (61–71)	104–121

### WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7–5.2 (40–54)	5.8–4.5 (49–63)	5.1–4.1 (55–69)	6.1–5.1 (46–55)	5–4.7 (56–60)	123–154

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

### NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.2–6.9 (39–41)	4.8–4.5 (59–63)	5.7–5.4 (50–52)	119–130

### WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
8.8–8.3 (32–34)	7–6.3 (40–45)	6.3–5.6 (45–50)	7.5–6.8 (38–42)	7.2–6.5 (39–43)	147–163

# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.0L, DIESEL

### NEDC

Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
5.7–4.3 (50–66)	4.6–4 (61–71)	5–4.1 (56–69)	107–131

### WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
8.2–5.5 (34–51)	6.5–4.9 (43–58)	5.5–4.1 (51–69)	6.4–5.2 (44–54)	6.4–4.8 (44–59)	127–166



# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)/PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

### NEDC

Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.2 (235)	26

### WLTP

Combined	CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.4 (202)	32

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

### Fuel Economy and CO2 Emissions

The declared fuel/energy consumptions, CO<sub>2</sub>-Emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. Light Duty Vehicle type-approved using the World Harmonised Light Vehicle Test Procedure (WLTP) will have Fuel/Energy Consumption and CO<sub>2</sub>-Emission information for New European Drive Cycle (NEDC) and WLTP. WLTP will fully replace the NEDC latest by the end of the year 2020. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

During NEDC phase-out, WLTP fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions are being correlated back to NEDC. There will be some variance to the previous fuel economy and emissions as some elements of the tests have altered, so the same car might have different fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. CO<sub>2</sub> is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

## Connected Vehicle (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

### CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

### CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

### CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

#### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Connectivity features**.
3. Select **Data sharing**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

### CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

# Connected Vehicle (If Equipped)

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.
- Note:** *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot confirm the connection of my Ford-Pass account to the modem.	<div><div>– Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch connectivity features on.</li></ul></div><div>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></div></div>

## Connected Vehicle (If Equipped)

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct network password.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li></ul></li></ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Connected Vehicle (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– System limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.</li><li>• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li></ul></li></ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– No software update available.</li><li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

### CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **Connectivity features**.
2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Select **Settings**.
4. Make sure that you have Wi-Fi visibility switched on.

**Note:** The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **Connectivity features**.
2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Select **Settings**.

**Note:** The SSID is the hotspot name.

4. Scroll to **Hide password**.
5. Uncheck the box.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, turn on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

### CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **Connectivity features**.
2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **SSID: \_\_\_\_**.
5. Enter your required SSID.
6. Select **Done**.
7. Select **Password: \_\_\_\_**.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Select **Done**.

# Audio System

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the

road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

**Note:** *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

## AUDIO UNIT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe

operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E289731



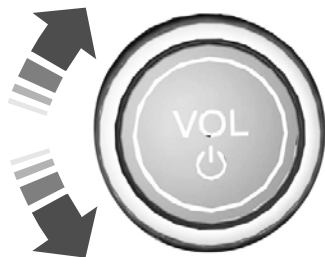
# Audio System

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

**Note:** Some features, such as satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features.

## Adjusting the Volume



Turn to adjust the volume.

## Changing Radio Stations



E248947

In radio mode, turn to search through the radio frequency band.

In satellite radio mode, turn to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

## Muting the Audio



Press and release the button to mute the playing audio.

## Pausing or Playing Media



In media mode, press and release the button to pause playback. Press the button again to resume playback.

In radio mode, press and release the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

## Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



Press and release the button.

**Note:** The button may be on the volume control.

## Switching the Display On and Off



Press and release the button.

## Using Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse



Press and release the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

# Audio System



Press and release the button to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

In radio mode, select a frequency band and press and release either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.

In satellite radio mode, press and release to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If you select a specific category, such as jazz, rock or news, press to find the next or previous station in the category you select.

## DIGITAL RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

### General Information

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

**Note:** Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

The following formats are supported:

- DAB.
- DAB+.
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

### Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

**Note:** When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.

### Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 111).

**Note:** If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.

**Note:** The system displays the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.

**Note:** The sound quality changes when your system switches from DAB to the corresponding FM station.

## Using Digital Audio Broadcast and SYNC

### Selecting Radio Band

1. Press the **SOURCE** button.
2. Select **DAB**.

**Note:** When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning skips to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio briefly mutes.

### Radio Station Tuning Control

#### Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

1. Press a seek button. The system stops at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

#### Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the station button.

# Audio System

2. Press the left or right arrow keys to change ensembles. Navigate through the list and select the station by pressing the touchscreen area displaying your selection.

**Note:** *The display only shows radio stations in the current ensemble.*

## Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Turn the **TUNE** dial to the left or right.

**Note:** *Frequencies are shown as Block IDs, for example 5A, 5B and 5C.*

## Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store your favorite radio stations on any preset.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. When the system stores the station, a message appears. The system mutes momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored, press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

**Note:** *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system mutes when this happens. This may result in unexpected changes to radio station presets.*

## Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, follow the on-screen prompts to change the settings.

**Note:** *Extra information may not always be available.*

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.



Select the settings options on the feature bar.

1. Select **Bluetooth**.
2. Switch **Bluetooth®** on.
3. Select **Add a Bluetooth device**.

**Note:** *A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.*

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** *A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.*

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.*

## STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 447).



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the **Bluetooth®** option.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

# Audio System



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

## PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

### Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, M4A, M4B, WMA, WAV, AAC, FLAC, APE and AIFF audio file formats.
- ext2, exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS and HFS+ file systems.

### Selecting the USB Device

Connect your device to the USB port.



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.

### Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.

### Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

## USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### USB A



# Audio System

## USB C



The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices.

**Note:** We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

### Locating the USB Ports

The USB ports may be in the following locations:

- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the lower instrument panel.

**Note:** The number and type of USB ports may vary depending on your vehicle.

**Note:** Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities. See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 179).

## APPS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

### Using Apple CarPlay

#### Switching Apple CarPlay On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

#### Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.
2. Disable Apple CarPlay.

#### Using Apps on an iOS Device

**Note:** For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

# Audio System

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

## Using Android Auto

### Switching Android Auto On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

### Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Android Auto preferences**.
2. Disable Android Auto.

### Using Apps on an Android Device

**Note:** For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Android Auto off.
2. Pair your device.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

## Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off.
3. Switch on Enable Mobile apps via USB in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

# Audio System

## Apps Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li></ul></li><li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li></ul></li><li>– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow the system to access the app if required.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch <b>Bluetooth®</b> off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Audio System

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of <b>Bluetooth®</b> ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available <b>Bluetooth®</b> ports, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li></ul></li></ul>

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2.5

### Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** This only works when connected via **Bluetooth®**. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 447).

**Note:** When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.



## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## About SYNC

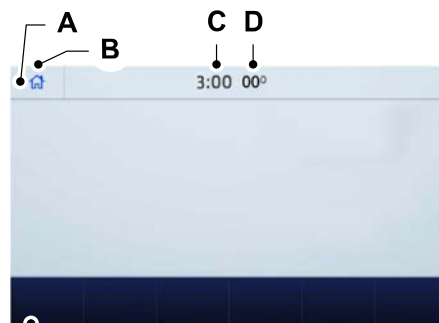
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h (3 mph).

## Using the Touchscreen



E

- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 478).

- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

## Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Emergency Assistance off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Traffic data source: Live traffic.



Traffic data source: Traffic broadcast.



Wireless charger active.

## Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a Bluetooth device. See **Entertainment** (page 463).



Select to adjust climate settings.



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 465).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 467).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 477).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 478).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning the Interior** (page 388).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

**Note:** The website notifies you if an update is available.

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

**Note:** The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

### Installing an Update

**Note:** You can use the system when installation is in progress.

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Switching Automatic System Updates On

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Automatic updates**.
3. Switch **Automatic system updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** You can use the system when download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network**

See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 440).

**Additional Information and Assistance**

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

**General**

**USING VOICE RECOGNITION**

The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel and wait for the voice prompt.

**Note:** Press the voice control button again to interrupt a voice prompt and begin speaking.

**Note:** Turn the volume control when a voice prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** Press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri on your iOS device.

The following voice commands are designed to help you from any screen:

- **List of commands**
- **Help**

The following tables list some of the more frequently used voice commands. For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.

Voice Command	Description
___ list of commands	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Cancel	Cancel an active voice session.
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific feature. <sup>1</sup>
Back	Return to the previous screen.
Main menu	Go to the main menu.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Next page	Go to the next page.
Previous page	Go to the previous page.

<sup>1</sup> Add the name of the feature to the command.

## Entertainment

### Audio Source

Voice Command	Description
Radio	Use the radio.
CD Player	Use the CD player.
Bluetooth audio	Use a <b>Bluetooth®</b> device.
USB	Use a USB or media player.

### Radio

Voice Command	Description
AM	Listen to AM radio.
___ AM	Tune to a specific AM frequency. <sup>1</sup>
DAB	Listen to DAB radio.

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
FM	Listen to FM radio.
___ FM	Tune to a specific FM frequency. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Add the radio frequency to two decimal places to the command.

## USB and Media Player

Voice Command	Description
Play album ___	Play your music by category. <sup>1</sup>
Play artist ___	
Play audiobook ___	
Play genre ___	
Play playlist ___	
Play podcast ___	
Play song ___	
Browse all albums	Browse music on a USB device.
Browse all artists	
Browse all audiobooks	
Browse all genres	

## SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Browse all playlists	
Browse all podcasts	
Browse all tracks	
Browse album ____	Browse your music by category on a USB device. <sup>1</sup>
Browse artist ____	
Browse audiobook ____	
Browse genre ____	
Browse playlist ____	
Browse podcast ____	

<sup>1</sup>Add an album name, artist name, audiobook name, genre name, playlist name, podcast name or track name to the command. Say the name exactly as it appears on your device.

### Phone

Voice Command	Description
Pair phone	Pair a cell phone or <b>Bluetooth</b> ®-enabled device.
Redial	Redial the last number that you dialed.
Dial ____	Dial a number. <sup>1</sup>

# SYNC™ 3

Voice Command	Description
Call ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook. <sup>2</sup>
Call ____ ____	Call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location. <sup>3</sup>
Listen to message	Listen to a text message.
Listen to message ____	Listen to a specific text message from a list of text messages.
Reply to message	Reply to the last text message.

<sup>1</sup> Add the number you want to dial to the command.

<sup>2</sup> Add a contact name from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

<sup>3</sup> Add a contact name and location from your phonebook to the command. Say the first and last name of your contact exactly as it appears on your device.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

### Setting a Destination

Voice Command	Description
Find an address	Enter a destination address. When prompted, provide the house number, the street and city.
Find a POI	Search for a point of interest by name or by category.
Find nearest ____	Search for a nearby point of interest by category. <sup>1</sup>
Find a POI category	Search for a point of interest category. <sup>1</sup>
Destination home	Set your saved home address as your destination.
Destination work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Favourite destinations	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.

<sup>1</sup> Add a point of interest category or the name of a major brand or chain to the command.



## Route Guidance

Voice Command	Description
Cancel route	Cancel the current route.
Reroute	Select an alternate route.
Repeat last instruction	Repeat the last guidance prompt.
Show route	Display an overview of the route.
Show map	Display the map on the touchscreen.
Show north up	Display a two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show heading up	Display a two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the touchscreen.
Show 3D	Display a three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Apps

### General

Voice Command	Description
Mobile apps	Start an app. The system prompts you for the app name.
List apps	Get a list of apps running on your device.
Find apps	Search and connect to apps running on your device.

## SYNC™ 3

### Active App

Voice Command	Description
___ help	Get a list of voice commands for a specific app. <sup>1</sup>
Close ___	Close an app. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Add an app name to the command.

### Voice Settings

Voice Command	Description
Voice settings	Go to the voice settings menu.
Interaction mode standard	Switch long voice prompts on.
Interaction mode advanced	Switch short voice prompts on.
Call confirmation on	Switch call confirmation on. The system prompts you to confirm before making a call.
Call confirmation off	Switch call confirmation off. The system does not prompt you to confirm before making a call.
Voice command lists on	Switch the display of voice commands on.
Voice command lists off	Switch the display of voice commands off.

## Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction

If necessary, the system decreases the blower motor speed when you are using voice commands to reduce the amount of background noise in your vehicle. It returns to normal when you are finished.

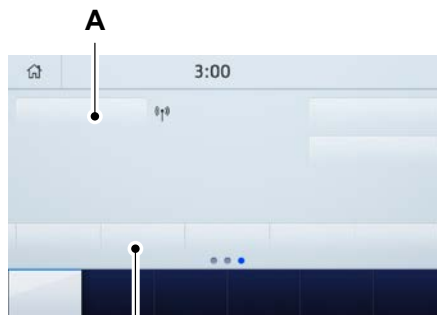
## Switching Automatic Blower Motor Speed Reduction Off

Simultaneously press the **A/C** and recirculated air buttons.

## ENTERTAINMENT



Select the audio option on the feature bar.



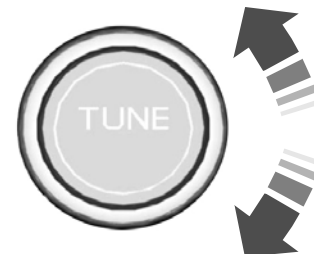
- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Using the Radio

### Setting an AM/FM Radio Station

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **AM** or **FM**.



3. Rotate the control to change the frequency.

### Selecting a FM Radio Station From a List

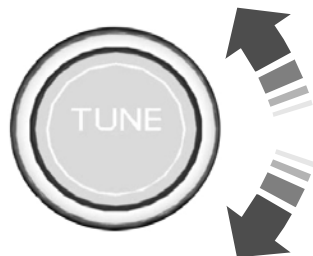
1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **FM**.
3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

### Selecting a Digital Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select **DAB**.

3. Select **Stations**.
4. Select an ensemble.
5. Select a radio station from the list.

## Manually Changing Digital Radio Stations



Rotate the control to change the station.

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons.

**Note:** The radio briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

**Note:** You can add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## Switching Traffic Announcements On

Select **Traffic (TA)**.

**Note:** If you switch traffic announcements on, traffic announcements broadcast by radio stations interrupt the current audio source to help you plan your route.

## Streaming Music From a Bluetooth Device

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 465).

Select **Sources**.



Select Bluetooth.

## Searching for Tracks on a Bluetooth Device

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

## Playing Tracks on a Bluetooth Device in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a Bluetooth Device



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format Bluetooth device. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a Bluetooth device.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Playing Music From a USB or Media Player

Connect your device to a USB port.

Select **Sources**.



Select USB.

**Note:** The system indexes your music before you can play it.

## Searching for Tracks on a USB or Media Player

Select **Browse**.

Select a track.

**Note:** Select the cover art to view information about the current track.

**Note:** You can also browse by album, artist, audiobook, genre, playlist, podcast or track name.

## Playing Tracks on a USB or Media Player in a Random Order



Select to play tracks in a random order.

## Repeating Tracks on a USB or Media Player



Select the repeat icon to repeat tracks.

**Note:** You can repeat one track or all tracks on an audio format USB or media player. You can repeat one track, all tracks or all tracks in one folder on a USB or media player.

**Note:** A small number one appears next to the repeat icon to indicate that a track is set to repeat. A small folder icon appears next to it to indicate that a folder is set to repeat.

## Supported Devices

The system supports most USB and media players, including iOS and Android devices.

## Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, MP4, WMA, WAV, AAC, AIFF, APE, DSD, and FLAC audio file formats.
- MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC file extensions.
- FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.

## Audio File Metadata

The system organizes files on your USB or media player by metadata tags. Metadata tags contain information about the file. If the metadata tags for the files on your USB or media player contain no information, the system classifies them as unknown. The system can index up to 50000 tracks on a USB device or media player, and up to 10 devices.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

## Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.

Make sure your cell phone is discoverable. See your cell phone's user manual.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Pair phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Your phone

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another cell phone.

### Change device

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

### Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

### Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

### Text messages

Display the cell phone messages.

## Siri

Connect to Siri on your iOS device.

### Phone Voice Assistant

Connect to the phone voice service on your Android device.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Apple CarPlay

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

Switching Apple CarPlay Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay preferences**.
3. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

Android Auto

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Switching Android Auto Off

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Switch **Android Auto** off.

NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

**Note:** For more information, refer to the local Ford website.



Select the navigation option on the feature bar.



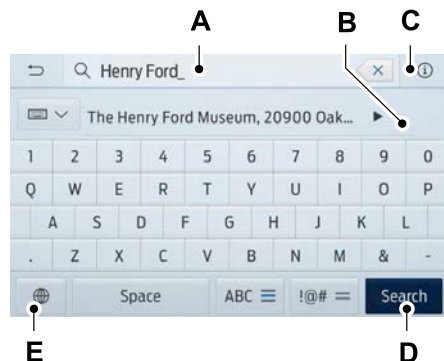
D

- A Map view menu.  
B Zoom out.

- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination

### Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.

- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**Note:** You can enter a destination in a number of formats, **city street number**, **city number street**, zip code or point of interest.

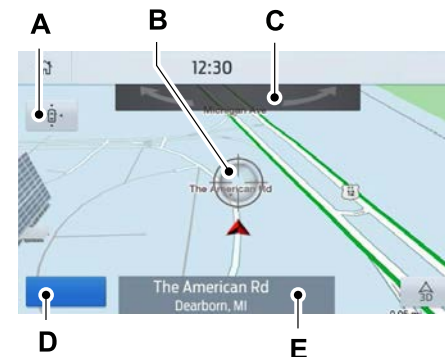
**Note:** You do not have to enter the destination country.

**Note:** To enter mutated vowels or accented characters, for example **ä** or **é**, press and hold the corresponding character on the keyboard.

Select **Search**.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

### Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.

Select **Start** to begin route guidance.



## Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

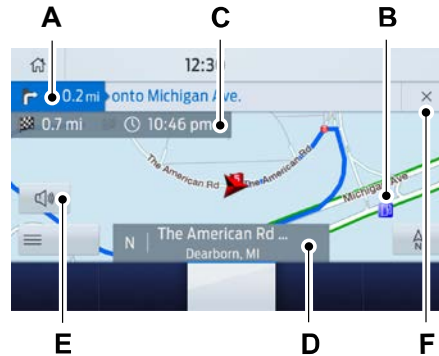
- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

## Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## Route Guidance



- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last guidance prompt.
- B Point of interest.

- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen view	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Motorway exit info	View exit information for your current route.
Turn list	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic list	View traffic nearby or on your current route. <sup>1</sup>
Navigation settings	Adjust navigation settings.
Where am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel route	Cancel route guidance.
Show route	View the entire current route on the map.
Re-route	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimise order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Start	Go to the next screen and start the new route.
Search	Enter a destination address.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.

Menu Item	Description
Favourites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.
Previous destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
POI	Display the point of interest categories.

<sup>1</sup>Reliant upon traffic message channel or live traffic.

**Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume**

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

**Muting Guidance Prompts**



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** *The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.*

**Adding Waypoints**

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

1. Select the search option on the map.

2. Set a destination.
3. Select the flag icon.
4. Select **Start**.

**Canceling Route Guidance**

**Canceling Route Guidance From the Route Guidance Menu**



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel route**.

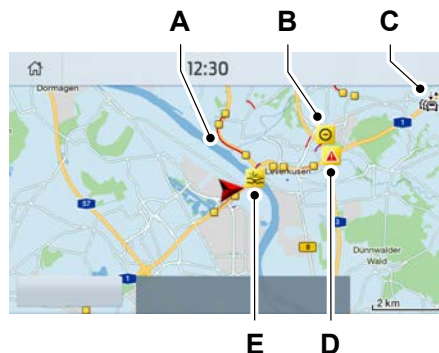
**Canceling Route Guidance From the Main Map**



Select the icon in the upper right-hand corner of the main map to cancel route guidance.

**Live Traffic (If Equipped)**

Live traffic provides near real-time traffic information to help you plan the fastest route to your destination. You must have an active subscription for Live Traffic.



- A Traffic congestion.
- B Road closure.
- C Live traffic active.
- D Urgent warning.
- E Traffic incident.

## Switching Live Traffic On

**Note:** Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network** (page 439).

1. Select **Settings**.

2. Select **FordPass Connect**.
3. Select **Connectivity settings**.
4. Switch **Vehicle connectivity** on.
5. Switch **Location** on.
6. Switch **Vehicle data & Remote ctrl** on.
7. Switch **Live Traffic** on.

## Navigation Map Updates

Please check the local Ford website or contact your dealership for navigation map updates.

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you can report them directly to HERE by visiting [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION (IF EQUIPPED)

### Power Flow



The Power Flow information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Apps.

## Vehicle Operational States

Power will flow to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and drive conditions.

- **Idling:** The vehicle is running and in Park (P). The engine and, or the high voltage battery are on.
- **Electric Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- **Hybrid Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- **Engine Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine provides power to the wheels.
- **Regenerative Braking:** The vehicle is running in Drive gear and is slowing down. Power captured by the regenerative braking system is sent back to the high voltage battery.
- **Charging:** The vehicle is plugged in and the high voltage battery is being charged.

## Engine On Due To

The following conditions help to explain why the engine is on, and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

- **Drive Power:** The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- **High Speed:** The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- **Heater Setting:** The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- **Neutral Gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in Neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- **Engine Cold:** The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- **Battery Charging:** The engine is on to charge the high-voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is charged.
- **Low Gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in low gear. Shift out of low gear to return to electric operation.
- **Normal Operation:** The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Low Use:** The engine is on to maintain engine oil quality. The vehicle returns to electric operation when low engine use mode is complete. See **Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation** (page 197).
- **Engine Braking Active:** The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.

- **Battery Temperature:** The engine is on due to high or low high-voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Drive Mode:** The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

## Charge Settings



The Charge Settings information for your plug-in hybrid vehicle is available through the Home screen or under Vehicle Settings. To improve your charging experience, your vehicle has the following convenience features.

## Charge Times

Once you set up Charge Times for a specific charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

**Note:** You can also set up and use these features using the FordPass app.

**Departure Times**

Setting Departure Times allows you to control charging schedules and have the vehicle cabin heated or cooled while plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. A calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

**Note:** You can also set up and use these features using the FordPass app.

**Charging Status**

Displays the present state of the charging system. See **Charging the High Voltage Battery** (page 221).

Charging Status	Description and Action
Will charge when plugged in.	Your vehicle is unplugged and starts charging when plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charge time.	Your vehicle is unplugged at a saved location with Charge Times enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your charge time settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charge time.	Your vehicle is plugged in at a saved location with Charge Times enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your Charge Times settings.
Charging.	Your vehicle is plugged in and using power to charge the high voltage battery or run electrical systems.
Charged.	Your vehicle is finished charging.

## SYNC™ 3

Charging Status	Description and Action
Vehicle charge fault.	Your vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your dealer.
Charge station fault.	Your vehicle is plugged in and a fault is detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected.	A charging coupler is plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Incompatible charge station.	Your vehicle is plugged in but cannot communicate with the charging station. Contact the station provider.
Charge station paused.	Your vehicle is plugged in and charging is paused at the charge station.

### Charging Time Information

Displays estimates of how long your vehicle will take to fully charge when plugged into a high or low power charger.

- High power estimate: The minimum time to a 100% charge using a high power charger.
- Low power estimate: The longest time to a 100% charge using a low power charger.

When charging, the start and estimated end time are displayed. When your vehicle is not plugged in and at a location with Charge Times enabled, the start and end times display based on known charging power.

**Note:** *Charging durations and end times are only estimates. Certain conditions may result in longer charging times. See **Charging the High Voltage Battery** (page 221).*

### High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

### Plug and Charging Status

Displays the plug and charging status icons.



Not plugged in.



Plugged in and not currently charging.



Plugged in and charging.



Plugged in and waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

## Charge Preferences

Touch the button to access Charge Time and Departure Time settings. Once set up, additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen.

### Charge Times On and Off Switch

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved Charge Times location. Use the switch to turn your charge time settings on and off for this location.

### Charge Times Location Name and Charging Time Information

The location name displays when your vehicle is at a saved Charge Times location. The charging start time is displayed along with the charging end time and associated charge level.

### Departure Times On and Off Switch

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times on and off. Switching departure times off does not delete your settings.

### Next Departure Times and Cabin Temperature

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin temperature setting.

### Charge Time Settings

Follow these steps to set a preferred charge time for a charging location.

1. Select Charge Preferences on the Charge Settings screen.
2. Select Charge Time Setup on the Edit Charge Preferences screen.
3. Select Add New Location on the Charge Times screen. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations from this screen.
4. Select an address from the Recent Charge Locations screen.
5. On the Confirm Location for Charge Times screen, you can edit the location name and set a max charge level as desired. Once you have your desired location name and max charge level, select Continue to Schedule.

**Note:** Charging will stop when your vehicle reaches the max charge level.

6. Select WEEKDAY or WEEKEND on the Preferred Charge Times screen.

7. On the Select preferred WEEKDAY or WEEKEND Charge Times screen, use the circular 24 hour clock to select your charging time windows. You can select up to two time windows by pressing and dragging across the hour buttons. When you have selected your preferred times then press Next to return to the Preferred Charge Times screen. Repeat for WEEKEND or WEEKDAY as desired. Once you are done setting preferred charge times, press Save.

**Note:** *Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.*

8. Your saved location now shows on the Charge Times screen. Select Done to return to the main charge settings screen. Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location the charge settings screen displays the location name, and the charging times are based on your Charge Time settings for that location plus the next Departure Time.

**Note:** *Reaching your max charge level by your next Departure Time is always the priority. When Charge Times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next Departure Time.*



## Departure Time Settings

1. Select Charge Preferences on the Charge Settings screen.
2. Select Departure Time Setup on the Edit Charge Preferences screen.
3. Two time settings show for each day of the week on the Departure Times schedule screen. Select any one.
4. On the Departure Time settings screen, set your desired departure time, cabin temperature and days of the week to repeat. Press Save.
5. Your settings are now shown on the Departure Times schedule screen. Press Back two times to return to the main charge settings screen. The next departure time and cabin temperature setting display.

**Note:** Cabin conditioning can perform differently depending on if you plug in with the included convenience cord or a higher power charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not always reach the set cabin temperature due to charging and ambient temperature conditions. This is normal operation.

## APPS

**Note:** For more information about available apps, supported devices and troubleshooting, refer to our local website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. See **Settings** (page 478).

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 465).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

## Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 465).
2. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.

3. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 465).
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 465).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.

5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

## SETTINGS



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

Select a tile to access the settings.



Select the option to display extra information.

## Ambient Lighting

You can adjust the ambient lighting settings.

## Android Auto

You can switch Android Auto on and off.

## Apple CarPlay

You can switch Apple CarPlay on and off.

## Audio

You can adjust the audio settings.

## Automatic Updates

You can switch automatic updates on and off and adjust the settings.

## Bluetooth®

You can switch Bluetooth on and off and pair your cell phone.

## Clock

You can adjust the clock settings.

## Display

You can adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

## Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

You can switch Emergency Assistance on and off.

## FordPass

You can adjust the FordPass settings.

## General

You can adjust settings like language, measurement units, or reset the system.

## Mobile Apps

You can adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

You can adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

## Phone

You can connect and disconnect your device, or manage the connected device settings.

## Seats (If Equipped)

You can adjust the position and the massage function of the seats.

## Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

## Valet Mode (If Equipped)

You can enable and disable the valet mode.

## Vehicle (If Equipped)

You can adjust the camera settings.

## Voice Control

You can adjust the voice control settings.

## Wi-Fi

You can switch Wi-Fi on and off and adjust the settings.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 455).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are speaking too soon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are using the wrong voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 455).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> <p>The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by the system.</p> </li> <li>– The name contains special characters, for example * - or +. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li></ul></li><li>– The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words does not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li></ul></li></ul>

## USB and Bluetooth Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect device settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> <li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Bluetooth does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot stream audio from my Bluetooth device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device not connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 465).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Media player not running. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the media player on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Corrupt files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Copyright protected files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Unsupported file format. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 463).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device indexing required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume down on your device</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 Tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li> </ul>



## Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the system. Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot download phonebook.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot connect my cell phone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> <li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li> <li>• Delete your device from system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 478).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Text messaging does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off, reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot hear text messages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on the local Ford website.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

**Navigation (If Equipped)**

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incorrect entry method.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not recognize coordinates.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You are using the wrong coordinates format.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li></ul></li></ul>

## Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your Android or iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect app settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Apps failed to fully close. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li> <li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 7.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch Bluetooth off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device volume is low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available Bluetooth ports, the system cannot find all of them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Password error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter the correct network password.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Obstructed network signal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li> <li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Hidden network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

### Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## Appendices

### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.



**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

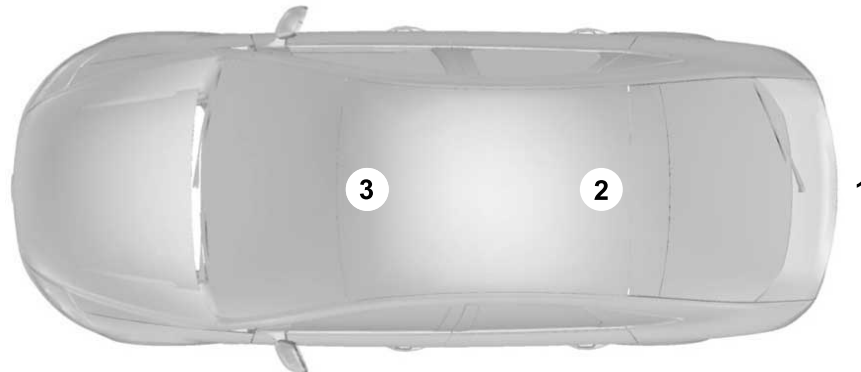
**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.



# Appendices

---

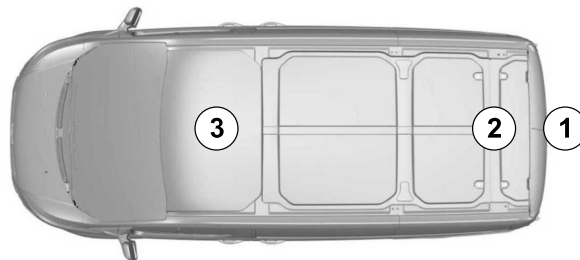
## Car/SUV



## Appendices

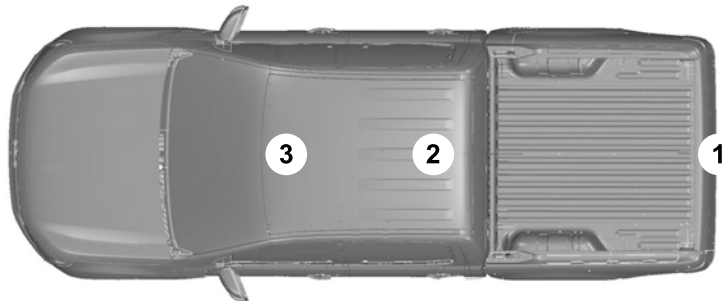
---

### Van



# Appendices

## Truck



Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

# Appendices

---

## ECALL USER INFORMATION

### eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

#### 1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 43).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 43).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 44).

#### 2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.

## Appendices

---

- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
- Vehicle Identification Number.
  - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
  - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
  - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.
  - Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
  - Any additional data (if applicable): -
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.  
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.  
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

## Appendices

---

Additional remarks (if any): -

2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.

2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.

(1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).

(2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).

(3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

# Appendices

---

## **3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)**

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the FordPass app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).
- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the FordPass app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the FordPass app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

# Appendices

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its

suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly



## Appendices

---

permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to

incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants

you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

## Appendices

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

### **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

#### General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.

- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

## Appendices

---

- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Appendices

---

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of  
Risk

## Appendices

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges

from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.

- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

### Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT

NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE

## Appendices

DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

### Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal

jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

### Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD

MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

## Appendices

---

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the “AAA”), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or

call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY’S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA’s and arbitrator’s fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY’S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed (“last written offer”), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator’s decision (called an “award”), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney’s fees, if any; and (3)

reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.

- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA’s and arbitrator’s fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator’s fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator’s fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney’s fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.



## Appendices

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(i) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the

TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

### **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

# Appendices

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or

markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by

the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is

## Appendices

dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

### **5. Limitation of Liability**

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL,

CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

### **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you

# Appendices

---

agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## 7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## 8. Miscellaneous

### 8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### 8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting

them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

# Appendices

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

### 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

## Appendices

---

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to,

content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING

OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

# Appendices

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is

licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End- User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

## Appendices

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from

Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post



# Appendices

and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of

the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”

# Appendices

“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guade-  
loupe,  
French  
Guiana  
and  
Marti-  
nique  
Mexico

“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto  
Nacional de Estadística y  
Geografía)”

Country

Jordan

Notice

“© Royal Jordanian Geographic  
Centre”. The foregoing notice  
requirement for Jordan Data is  
a material term of the Agree-  
ment. If Client or any of its  
permitted sublicensees (if any)  
fail to meet such requirement,  
HERE shall have the right to  
terminate Client’s license with  
respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted  
sublicensees (if any) are restricted from  
licensing and/or otherwise distributing  
HERE’s database for the country of Jordan  
(“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise  
Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities  
for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan  
or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition,  
Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any)  
and End-Users are restricted from using  
the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications  
if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity  
using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or  
(ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes  
of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications”

shall mean Geomarketing applications,  
GIS applications, mobile business asset  
management applications, call center  
applications, telematics applications,  
public organization Internet applications  
or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to  
Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and  
agrees that in certain countries of the  
Europe Territory, Client will need to  
obtain rights directly from third party  
RDS-TMC code providers to receive and  
use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to  
deliver to End-Users Transactions in any  
way derived from or based on such  
Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE  
shall deliver the Data incorporating  
Traffic Codes to Client only after  
receiving certification from Client of its  
having obtained such rights.

# Appendices

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Trans-action that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Trans-ports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copy-right notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is condi-tioned on Client's obtaining a permit from

Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compli-ance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice	
Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"

## Appendices

Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	

### VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)). Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

## Appendices

### **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED

HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE

## Appendices

---

UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE, TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

### VII. China Territory

#### *Personal Use Only*

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not

remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

#### *Restrictions*

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

#### *Limited Warranty*

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

#### *Customer Remedies*

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

## Appendices

---

### **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING

OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

### **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

### **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

### **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

### **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

## Appendices

---

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

### **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain

content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR



# Appendices

CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

**(1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and

**(2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

# Appendices

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunattraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

# Appendices

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products

and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit [www.wirelessconformity.ford.com](http://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com).

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

### Radio Frequency Statement

SYNC Version	FCC Identification Number	IC Identification Number
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH

## Appendices

---



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

These devices comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device accepts any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.

# Index

<b>A</b>		
A/C		
See: Climate Control.....	159	
About This Manual.....	9	
ABS		
See: Brakes.....	244	
ABS driving hints		
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	244	
Accessories		
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	15	
Acknowledgments.....	9	
Active Park Assist - 6-Speed Manual Transmission – MMT6.....	262	
Active Park Assist - 8-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	265	
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	274	
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	288	
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	283	
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....	283	
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators - Vehicles With: Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	283	
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	276	
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....	276	
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	275	
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....	274	
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	288	
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	288	
Adaptive Headlamps.....	82	
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	381	
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	287	
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	287	
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	69	
AFS		
See: Adaptive Headlamps.....	82	
Air Conditioning		
See: Climate Control.....	159	
Alarm		
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	65	
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	67	
All-Wheel Drive.....	242	
Ambient Lighting.....	86	
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery.....	65	
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor.....	67	
Appendices.....	492	
Apps.....	477	
Apps - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	449	
At a Glance.....	18	
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	109	
Audio Control.....	69	
Audio System.....	444	
General Information.....	444	
Audio Unit.....	444	
Auto Hold.....	251	
Autolamps.....	78	
Automatic Climate Control.....	160	
Automatic High Beam Control.....	87	
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	88	
Automatic Transmission - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	232	
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check.....	378	

# Index

Automatic Transmission - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	237
Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission.....	193
Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission.....	192
Auto-Start-Stop - Mild Hybrid Electric Vehicle (MHEV).....	190
Autowipers.....	74
Auxiliary Heater.....	165
Auxiliary Power Points.....	179
AWD	
See: All-Wheel Drive.....	242

## B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	379
Blind Spot Information System.....	300
BLIS	
See: Blind Spot Information System.....	300
Body Styling Kits.....	390
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	362
Booster Seats.....	28
Brake Fluid Check.....	378
Brakes.....	244
General Information.....	244
Breaking-In.....	340
Bulb Specification Chart.....	432

## C

Canceling the Set Speed.....	272
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Diesel.....	416
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	420
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L, Diesel.....	424
Capacities and Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	429
Capacities and Specifications.....	411
Cargo Nets.....	326
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	387
Catalytic Converter.....	211
Changing a Bulb.....	382
Changing a Fuse.....	360
Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
Changing the 12V Battery.....	379
Changing the Backup Battery.....	45
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	443
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	382
Charging the High Voltage Battery.....	221
Checking Current Highway Information Status - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	324
Checking Current Highway Information Status - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	324

Checking MyKey System Status.....	54
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	381
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	23
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	23
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	23
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	23
Child Restraints.....	24
Child Restraint Position Information.....	24
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	27
Installing Child Restraints.....	28
Child Safety.....	22
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	23
Child Restraints.....	24
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....	29
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks.....	29
Child Safety Precautions.....	22
Cleaning the Exterior.....	387
Cleaning the Interior.....	388
Cleaning the Wheels.....	390
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....	387
Clearing All MyKeys.....	53
Climate Control.....	159
Clutch Fluid Check.....	379
Cold Weather Precautions.....	339

# Index

Connected Vehicle.....	439
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	439
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	439
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	439
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Vehicles With: Modem.....	440
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting – Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	441
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	447
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	439
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	439
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	439
What Is the Modem.....	439
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	440
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	374
Creating a MyKey.....	53
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	443
Cross Traffic Alert.....	303
Cruise Control.....	272
Cruise Control Indicators.....	273
Cruise Control – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	70
Cruise Control – Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....	70
Cruise Control – Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....	71

Current Highway Information.....	324
----------------------------------	-----

## D

Data Recording.....	11
Daytime Running Lamps.....	79
Declaration of Conformity.....	527
Declaration of Conformity – Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	527
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	218
Digital Radio.....	446
Direction Indicators.....	85
Displaying the Efficient Drive Mode – Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	322
Dog Guard.....	330
Doors and Locks.....	56
Drive Mode Control.....	320
Drive Modes.....	320
Drive Modes.....	320
Deep Snow/Sand.....	320
Eco.....	321
Normal.....	321
Slippery.....	321
Sport.....	321
Driver Airbag.....	36
Driver Alert.....	293
Driver Knee Airbag.....	40
Driving Aids.....	291
Driving Hints.....	339
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	340

## DRL

See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	79
---------------------------------	----

## E

eCall.....	43
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	45
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	45
eCall – Information Messages.....	45
eCall User Information.....	496
Economical Driving.....	339
Efficient Drive Mode.....	322
Trip Summary.....	322
Efficient Drive Mode Indicators.....	323
Electric Parking Brake.....	245
Electric Vehicle Information.....	472
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	492
Emergency Call Indicators.....	44
Emergency Call Limitations.....	43
Emergency Call Requirements.....	43
Enabling Current Highway Information.....	324
Enabling Remote Start.....	157
End User License Agreement.....	500
Engine Coolant Check.....	374
Engine Emission Control.....	211
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Engine Oil Check.....	373
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	372

# Index

Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	373
Engine Oil Dipstick.....	372
Entertainment.....	463
Environment.....	17
EPB	
See: Electric Parking Brake.....	245
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	11
Exterior Mirrors.....	90

## F

Fastening the Seatbelts.....	31
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	391
Floor Mats.....	341
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	81
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	81
Front Fog Lamps.....	81
Front Parking Aid.....	258
Fuel and Refueling.....	201
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	165
Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L	
Diesel.....	434

Fuel Consumption Figures - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™.....	435
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.0L,	
Diesel.....	436
Fuel Consumption Figures - 2.5L, Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	437
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	438
Fuel Consumption.....	210
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....	203
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	201
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	202
Fuel Quality - Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
(PHEV).....	202
Fuel Shutoff.....	342
Fuse Box Locations.....	350
Fuses.....	350
Fuse Specification Chart.....	350

## G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	216
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/	
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV),	
Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument	
Cluster Display Screen.....	100
Gauges - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/	
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV),	
Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster	
Display Screen.....	97

Gauges - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch	
Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	95
Gauges - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch	
Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	104
Gauges - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch	
Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	94
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	232
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	46
Glare-Free High Beam.....	79
Global Opening and Closing.....	90

## H

Hazard Flashers.....	342
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	381
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	78
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Headlamp Leveling.....	81
Headlamp Leveling - Vehicles With:	
Manual Headlamp Leveling.....	82
Headlamp Washers.....	76
Headrest	
See: Head Restraints.....	170
Head Restraints.....	170
Head Up Display.....	152
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	165
Heated Rear Window.....	165
Heated Seats.....	175
Heated Steering Wheel.....	71



# Index

Heated Windshield.....	165
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	159
High Voltage Battery.....	221
General Information.....	221
Hill Start Assist.....	250
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	163
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	164
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	244
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	362
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	274
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	274
How Does eCall Work.....	43
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	177
Hybrid Vehicle Frequently Asked Questions.....	199
Hybrid Vehicle Operation.....	195

## I

Information Display Control - Vehicles With: Head Up Display (HUD).....	71
--	----

Information Display Control - Vehicles Without: Head Up Display (HUD).....	71
Information Displays.....	111
General Information - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 3.....	124
General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	111
General Information - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 2.5.....	115
General Information - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/SYNC 3.....	121
Information Messages.....	130
Instrument Cluster.....	94
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	78
Instrument Panel - LHD.....	18
Instrument Panel - RHD.....	20
Interior Air Quality.....	169
Interior Lamps.....	85
Interior Mirror.....	92
Introduction.....	9

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	342
Jump Starting the Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	345

## K

Keyless Starting.....	182
Keys and Remote Controls.....	46

## L

Lane Keeping System.....	294
Liftgate.....	60
Lighting Control.....	77
Lighting.....	77
General Information.....	77
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	329
Load Carrying.....	325
General Information.....	325
Locating the Cabin Air Filter.....	169
Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Luggage Anchor Points.....	325
Luggage Covers.....	328
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
Lug Nuts.....	409

## M

Maintenance.....	362
General Information.....	362
Manual Climate Control.....	159
Manual Liftgate.....	60
Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	43
Manual Seats.....	172

# Index

Manual Transmission.....	232
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	111
Mirrors	
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	89
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	15
Moonroof.....	92
MyKey Settings.....	52
Configurable MyKey Settings.....	52
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings.....	52
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	54
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions.....	55
MyKey – Information Messages.....	54
MyKey™.....	52
MyKey Settings.....	52
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	54
<b>N</b>	
Navigation.....	467
<b>O</b>	
Oil Change Indicator Reset - 1.5L	
EcoBoost™/2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	374
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	373
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	362
Overhead Console.....	181
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	88

Overriding the Set Speed.....	283
<b>P</b>	
Parking Aids.....	256
Principle of Operation.....	256
Passenger Airbag.....	37
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Pedestrian Alert System.....	42
Pedestrian Protection.....	42
Personalized Settings.....	127
Phone.....	465
Playing Media From a USB Device -	
Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	448
Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle Operation.....	197
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	56
Power Liftgate.....	61
Power Seats.....	173
Power Windows.....	89
Pre-Collision Assist - Vehicles With:	
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	309
Pre-Collision Assist - Vehicles With:	
Pre-Collision Assist.....	315
Preconditioning Your Vehicle for Cold	
Weather Driving - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	340
Programming a MyKey.....	53
Protecting the Environment.....	17

Puncture	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
<b>R</b>	
Rear Fog Lamps.....	81
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Warnings.....	178
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	178
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	177
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Precautions.....	177
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	177
Rear Parking Aid.....	256
Rear Seats.....	175
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	326
Rear View Camera.....	268
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	268
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	76
Reduced Engine Performance.....	339
Refueling - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	204
Refueling - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	207
Remote Control.....	46
Remotely Starting and Stopping the	
Vehicle.....	157
Remote Start Limitations.....	157
Remote Start.....	157

# Index

Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With:	
Heated Steering Wheel.....	158
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without:	
Heated Steering Wheel.....	157
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	389
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	15
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	51
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	169
Resuming the Set Speed.....	273
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With:	
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	282
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With:	
Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	282
Roadside Emergencies.....	342
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	329
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	340
Running Out of Fuel.....	203

## S

Safety Precautions.....	201
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	32
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	32
Seatbelt Reminder - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen/12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	34
Seatbelts.....	31

Seats.....	170
Security.....	65
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	320
Selective Catalytic Reductant System.....	211
Settings.....	478
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	281
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	279
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	280
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	272
Side Airbags.....	39
Side Curtain Airbags.....	40
Side Sensing System.....	260
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	170
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	398
Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	272
Speed Limiter.....	291
Stability Control.....	254
Principle of Operation.....	254
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	185
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	183
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System.....	187

Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	182
General Information.....	182
Steering.....	308
Steering Wheel.....	69
Storage Compartments.....	181
Streaming Bluetooth Audio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	447
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	92
Sun Visors.....	92
Supplementary Restraints System.....	36
Principle of Operation.....	36
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	278
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	279
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	87
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	88
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	272
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	322
Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	322

# Index

Switching Efficient Drive Mode On and Off	
- Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	322
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	284
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	284
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	286
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	286
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	284
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	178
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 12.3 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	38
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Instrument Cluster Display Screen.....	37
Symbols Glossary.....	9
SYNC™ 3.....	453
General Information.....	453
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	480

## T

Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	411

Tire Care.....	396
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	391
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	399
Tire Pressures.....	407
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	391
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	391
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	391
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Detachable Tow Ball.....	332
Tow Ball - Vehicles With: Retractable Tow Ball.....	335
Towbar Dimensions.....	412
Towing a Trailer.....	331
Towing Points.....	349
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission, MMT6.....	338
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	338
Towing.....	331
Traction Control.....	253
Principle of Operation.....	253
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	307
Trailer Sway Control.....	332
Transmission.....	232
Transporting the Vehicle.....	348
Trip Summary.....	322
How Does Trip Summary Work.....	322
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	322

## U

Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....	367
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)/Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	371
Under Hood Overview.....	365
Unique Driving Characteristics.....	190
USB Port.....	448
Using All-Wheel Drive.....	242
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	54
Using Snow Chains.....	398
Using Stability Control.....	255
Using Summer Tires.....	397
Using Traction Control.....	253
Using Voice Recognition.....	455
Using Voice Recognition - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	452
Using Winter Tires.....	397

## V

Vehicle Care.....	387
Vehicle Dimensions.....	411
Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	415
Vehicle Identification Number.....	416
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	414
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	443

# Index

Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	159
VIN	
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	416
See: Vehicle Identification Number - Excluding: Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	415
Voice Control.....	70

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	105
Washer Fluid Check.....	381
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	387
See: Wipers and Washers.....	73
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	439
What Is Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering.....	274
What Is Automatic High Beam Control.....	87
What Is Cruise Control.....	272
What Is Current Highway Information.....	324
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	320
What Is eCall.....	43
What Is Efficient Drive Mode.....	322
What Is Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	274
What Is MyKey.....	52
What Is Remote Start.....	157
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	169
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	177
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	403
Wheels and Tires.....	391
General Information.....	391
Wi Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	443
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	440
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	443
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	443
Windows and Mirrors.....	89
Windshield Washers - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.5.....	75
Windshield Washers - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	74
Windshield Wipers.....	73
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	397
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	381
Wipers and Washers.....	73
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	180





